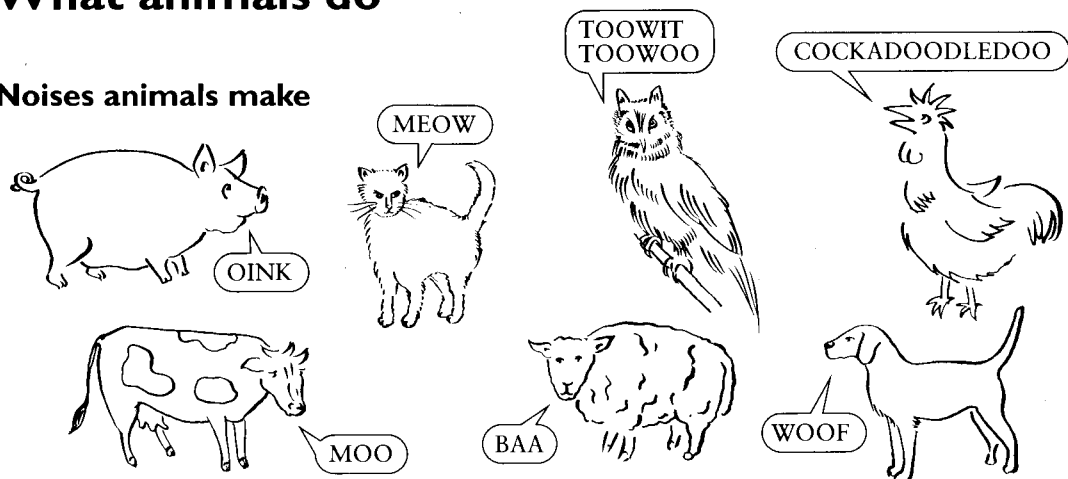


73 What animals do

Noises animals make



Cats **mew** when they're hungry, **purr** when they're happy and **caterwaul** when they're on the roof at midnight.

Dogs **bark**. They also **growl** when they're angry. Lions **roar**.

Sheep and goats **bleat**, horses **neigh** and pigs **grunt**. Cows **moo**.

Frogs **croak** and ducks **quack**. Cocks **crow**, hens **cluck** and owls **hoot**.

N.B. All these verbs are regular verbs.

B

Movements animals make

Birds **fly** and fish **swim**.

Butterflies **flutter**.

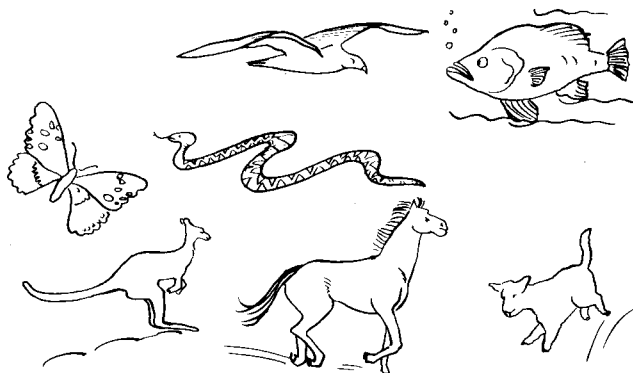
Kangaroos **hop**.

Snakes **slither**.

Horses **trot** and **gallop**

(galloping is faster than trotting).

Lambs **skip** in the spring.



N.B. Fly (flew, flown) and swim (swam, swum) are the only irregular verbs here.

Babies animals have

Cats have kittens and dogs have puppies. Horses have foals. Sheep have lambs.

Cows have calves. Pigs have piglets. Bears, wolves and lions have cubs.

Ducks have ducklings. Hens lay eggs from which chickens hatch.

Tadpoles turn into frogs. Caterpillars turn into butterflies.

D

People and animals

People are often compared to animals. The following adjectives can be used about people. A more formal translation is given.

catty or bitchy: malicious-tongued
mousy: dull, uninteresting, shy, quiet
sheepish: awkwardly self-conscious

ratty: bad-tempered
dogged: stubborn
cocky: arrogant

Exercises

73.1 Match the verb with the sound. The first example has been done.

1 hoot	meow
2 bleat	toowit toowoo
3 bark	oink
4 grunt	cockadoodledoo
5 mew	woof
6 crow	baa

73.2 Complete the following text, putting the appropriate missing verbs into the correct form.

It is not really all that peaceful out in the country. Yesterday I was woken at dawn when the cock started (1). The calves soon began (2) and this woke the dogs who (3) until the horses started (4). Lots of hens (5) right outside my window and so I got up. I tripped over the cat who was lying in the sun at the front door but she didn't even stop (6).

73.3 Which of the adjectives in D would you be pleased to be called?

73.4 Most of the sound verbs in A and all the movement verbs in B can also be used to describe sounds and movements made by humans. Mark the following statements true or false.

- 1 If someone growls at you, they are probably in a bad mood.
- 2 If someone croaks, they probably have a sore throat.
- 3 If someone hoots, they are probably very unhappy.
- 4 If someone is caterwauling, they are singing very sweetly.
- 5 If someone barks at you, they sound rather angry or abrupt.
- 6 If someone grunts when you ask something, they are showing a lot of interest in what you have said.

73.5 Illustrate the meaning of the words below by writing sentences (about people rather than animals).

Example: 1 skip The little girl loves skipping with her new rope.

2 fly 3 swim 4 slither 5 hop 6 trot 7 gallop

73.6 Look at the following examples of notices and fill in the names of the appropriate young animal in each case. Which words help you decide?

- 1 New-born for sale. Pedigree spaniel.
- 2 Good home wanted for six All toms. Already house-trained. Part-Siamese. Very intelligent.
- 3 Come and see the brand-new polar bear at the zoo.
- 4 Hadley Farm open this weekend. All children will enjoy the chance to hold the baby and to stroke their soft wool.
- 5 Spend the weekend at Sun Park. Hundreds of new Just hatched but already able to swim happily behind their mums.

74 Idioms and fixed expressions – general

Idioms are fixed expressions with meanings that are usually not clear or obvious. The individual words often give you no help in deciding the meaning. The expression **to feel under the weather**, which means ‘to feel unwell’ is a typical idiom. The words do not tell us what it means, but the context usually helps.

A Tips for dealing with idioms

Think of idioms as being just like single words; always record the whole phrase in your notebook, along with information on grammar and collocation.

This tin-opener has seen **better days**. [it is rather old and broken down; usually of things, always perfect tense form]

Idioms are usually rather informal and include an element of personal comment on the situation. They are sometimes humorous or ironic. As with any informal ‘commenting’ single word, be careful how you use them. Never use them just to sound ‘fluent’ or ‘good at English’. In a formal situation with a person you do not know, don’t say,

‘How do you do, Mrs Watson. Do **take the weight off your feet**.’ [sit down].

Instead say ‘Do sit down’ or ‘Have a seat’.

Idioms can be grouped in a variety of ways. Use whichever way you find most useful to help you remember them. Here are some possible types of grouping.

Grammatical

get the wrong end of the stick [misunderstand]	}	verb + object
pull a fast one [trick/deceive somebody]		
poke your nose in(to) [interfere]		
be over the moon [extremely happy/elated]	}	verb + preposition phrase
feel down in the dumps [depressed/low]		
be in the red [have a negative bank balance]		

By meaning e.g. idioms describing people’s character/intellect

He’s as daft as a brush. [very stupid/silly]

He takes the biscuit. [is the extreme / the worst of all]

You’re a pain in the neck. [a nuisance / difficult person]

By verb or other key word e.g. idioms with **make**

I don’t see why you have to **make a meal out** of everything.
[exaggerate the importance of everything]

I think we should **make a move**. It’s gone ten o’clock. [go/leave]

Most politicians are **on the make**. I don’t trust any of them.
[wanting money/power for oneself]

B Grammar of idioms

It is important when using idioms to know just how flexible their grammar is. Some are more fixed than others. For instance, **barking up the wrong tree** [be mistaken] is always used in continuous, not simple form, e.g. I think you’re **barking up the wrong tree**.

A good dictionary may help but it is best to observe the grammar in real examples.

Note how Units 76–91 group idioms in different ways.

Exercises

74.1 Complete the idioms in these sentences with one of the key words given, as in the example. If you are not sure, try looking up the key word in a good dictionary.

clanger shot ocean plate block handle pie

- 1 All the promises these politicians make! It's just *pie* in the sky. (big promises that will never materialise)
- 2 The small amount of money donated is just a drop in the compared with the vast sum we need. (tiny contribution compared with what is needed)
- 3 You really dropped a when you criticised the Americans last night; that man opposite you was from New York! (said something inappropriate/embarrassing)
- 4 I can't do that job as well; I've got enough on my as it is. (have more than enough work)
- 5 When I told her she just flew off the and shouted at me. (lost her temper)
- 6 His father was a gambler too. He's a real chip off the old (just like one's parents/grandparents)
- 7 I wasn't really sure; I guessed it; it was just a in the dark. (a wild guess)

74.2 Use a good general dictionary or a dictionary of idioms to see if it can help you decide which version of these sentences is in the normal grammatical form for the idiom concerned, as in the example. Check the meaning too, if you are not sure.

Example: You bark / are barking up the wrong tree if you think I did it. (see B opposite)

- 1 Holland is springing / springs to mind as the best place to go for a cycling holiday; it's very flat.
- 2 That remark is flying / flies in the face of everything you've ever said before on the subject.
- 3 He was innocent after all. It just goes / is just going to show that you shouldn't believe what you read in the papers.
- 4 You sit / 're sitting pretty! Look at you, an easy job, a fantastic salary, a free car!
- 5 His attitude is leaving / leaves a lot to be desired. I do wish he would try to improve a little.

74.3 How would you organise this selection of idioms into different groups? Use some of the ways suggested on the opposite page, plus any other ways you can think of.

be in a fix child's play rough and ready be up to it hold your tongue
be out of sorts hold your horses a fool's errand odds and ends
stay mum give or take

74.4 Without using a dictionary, try to guess the meaning of these idioms from the context.

- 1 It's midnight. Time to hit the sack.
- 2 This is just kid's stuff. I want something challenging!
- 3 He was down and out for two years, but then he got a job and found a home for himself.

75 Everyday expressions

Everyday spoken language is full of fixed expressions that are not necessarily difficult to understand (their meaning may be quite 'transparent') but which have a fixed form which does not change. These have to be learnt as whole expressions. These expressions are often hard to find in dictionaries, so listen out for them.

A

Conversation-building expressions

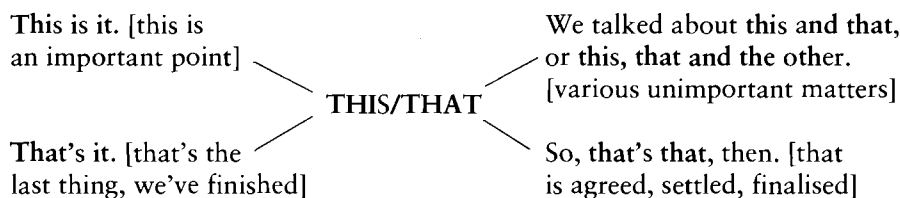
These are some common expressions that help to modify or organise what we are saying. There are many more expressions like these. (See also Unit 100.)

<i>expression</i>		<i>meaning/function</i>
As I was saying, I haven't seen her for years.	→	takes the conversation back to an earlier point
As I/you say, we'll have to get there early to get a seat.	→	repeats and confirms something someone has already said
Talking of skiing, whatever happened to Bill Jakes?	→	starting a new topic but linking it to the present one
If you ask me, she's heading for trouble.	→	if you want my opinion (even if no-one has asked for it)
That reminds me, I haven't rung George yet.	→	something in the conversation reminds you of something important
Come to think of it, did he give me his number after all? I think he may have forgotten.	→	something in the conversation makes you realise there may be a problem/query about something

B

Key words

Some everyday expressions can be grouped around key words. **This** and **that**, for example, occur in several expressions:



Common expressions for modifying statements

- If the worst comes to the worst, we'll have to cancel the holiday. [if the situation gets very bad indeed]
- If all else fails, we could fax them. [if nothing else succeeds]
- What with one thing and another, I haven't had time to reply to her letter. [because of a lot of different circumstances]
- When it comes to restaurants, this town's not that good. [in the matter of restaurants]
- As far as I'm concerned, we can eat at any time. [as far as it affects me / from my point of view]
- As luck would have it, she was out when we called. [as a result of bad luck]

Exercises

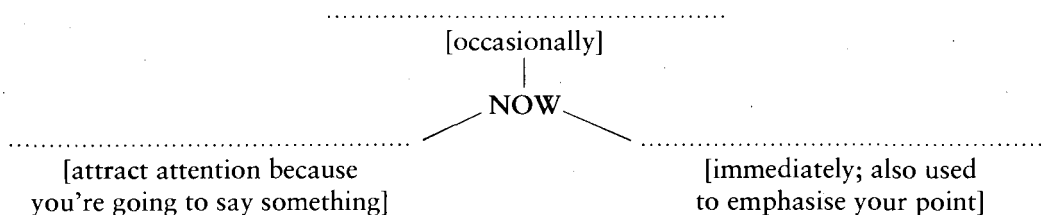
75.1 Complete the fixed expressions in these sentences, as far as possible without looking at the left-hand page.

- 1 Come, I don't remember giving her the key. I'd better ring her and check, just in case.
- 2 If you, the economy's going to get much worse before it gets any better.
- 3 holidays, have you got any plans for next year?
- 4 A: It's going to be expensive.
B: Yes, it'll be fun, and a great opportunity, but, as, it will be expensive.
- 5 That, I have a message for you from Sid.
- 6 As, before the postwoman interrupted us, we plan to extend the house next spring.

75.2 Which of the expressions with *this/that* opposite would be most suitable for the second parts of these mini-dialogues?

- 1 A: What were you and Lindsay talking about?
B: Oh,
- 2 A: How many more?
B: No more, actually,
- 3 A: The most important thing is that nobody's happy.
B: Yes, well,
- 4 A: Okay, I'll take our decisions to the committee.
B: Right, so, then. Thanks.

75.3 See if you can complete this network of everyday expressions with *now*, as with the *this/that* network opposite. Use a dictionary if necessary.



Use the expressions with *now* to rewrite these sentences.

- 1 Do you want me to do it straight away, or can it wait?
- 2 So, everybody, listen carefully. I have news for you.
- 3 I bump into her in town occasionally, but not that often.

75.4 Which expressions contain the following key words?

- 1 comes 2 luck 3 fails 4 worst 5 far 6 thing

Follow-up: Make a list of common expressions like the ones in this unit in your language. How do you say them in English?

76 Similes – as...as... / like...

A

As...as... similes are easy to understand. If you see the phrase **as dead as a doornail**, you don't need to know what a **doornail** is, simply that the whole phrase means 'totally dead'. But, remember, fixed similes are not 'neutral'; they are usually informal/colloquial and often humorous. So, use them with care, and keep them generally as part of your receptive vocabulary.

Creating a picture in your mind can often help you remember the simile:



as blind as a bat as thin as a rake as strong as an ox as quiet as a mouse

Some can be remembered as pairs of opposites.

as heavy as lead ≠ as light as a feather as drunk as a lord ≠ as sober as a judge
as black as night ≠ as white as snow

Some can be remembered by sound patterns.

As brown as a berry as good as gold as cool as a cucumber

Some other useful as...as... phrases.

The bed was **as hard as iron** and I couldn't sleep.
I'll give this plant some water. The soil's **as dry as a bone**.
He's **as mad as a hatter**. He crossed the Atlantic in a bathtub.
She told the teacher, **as bold as brass**, that his lessons were boring.
You'll have to speak up; he's **as deaf as a post**.
Don't worry. Using the computer's **as easy as falling off a log**.
She knew the answer **as quick as a flash**.
When I told him, his face went **as red as a beetroot**.

Sometimes the second part can change the meaning of the first.

The Princess's skin was **as white as snow**. [beautifully white]
When he saw it, his face went **as white as a sheet**. [pale with fear/horror]
The fish was bad and I was **as sick as a dog**. [vomiting]
She ran off with my money; I felt **as sick as a parrot**. [bad feeling of
disillusionment/frustration]

B

Like...

My plan worked **like a dream**, and the problem was soon solved.
Be careful the boss doesn't see you; she has eyes **like a hawk**.
No wonder he's fat. He eats **like a horse** and drinks **like a fish**.
Did you sleep well? Yes, thanks, **like a log**.
Sorry, I forgot to ring him again. I've got a head **like a sieve**!
The boss is **like a bear with a sore head** today. [in a very bad temper]
She goes around **like a bull in a china shop**. [behaving in a very clumsy, insensitive way]
Criticising the government in his presence is **like a red rag to a bull**. [certain to make
him very angry]

Exercises

76.1 Complete the as...as... similes.

- Rose is as mad as a; you wouldn't believe the crazy things she does.
- You're not eating enough; you're as thin as a
- He never says a thing; he's as quiet as a
- You'll have to shout; she's as deaf as a
- I'm afraid I can't read this small print; I'm as blind as a without my glasses.

76.2 Different similes contain the same word. Fill the gap with the appropriate words.

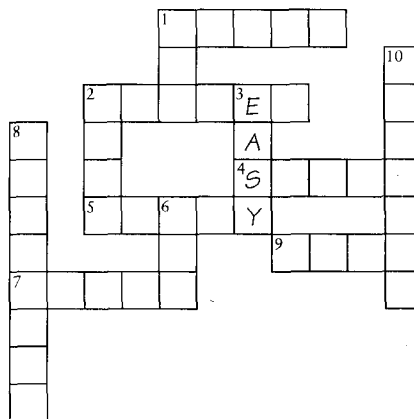
- I feel great now. I like a log.
- No! It's as easy as off a log.
- After eating that bad cheese I was as sick as a
- I knew she had swindled me. I felt as sick as a
- The old man's hair was as white as
- Her face suddenly went as white as

76.3 Put the correct number in the right-hand boxes to complete the similes, as in the example. There are two that are not on the left-hand page. Try and guess them.

	<input type="checkbox"/> 1 quick		<input type="checkbox"/> daisy
	<input type="checkbox"/> 2 red		<input type="checkbox"/> 5 ox
as	<input type="checkbox"/> 3 flat	as a(n)	<input type="checkbox"/> flash
	<input type="checkbox"/> 4 fresh		<input type="checkbox"/> beetroot
	<input type="checkbox"/> 5 strong		<input type="checkbox"/> pancake

76.4 Simile word puzzle. Fill in the answers, as in the example.

Across	Down
1 bold	1 blind
2 mad	2 iron
4 white	3 log
5 fresh	6 cold
7 quiet	8 cool
9 dry	10 light



76.5 What can you say about...

- a person who sees everything and never misses a thing?
- a plan or course of action that works very well?
- someone who eats and drinks a great deal?
- someone with a very bad memory?

Tip: You can always make a simile using as...as can be, for example, I need a drink; I'm as thirsty as can be!

77 Binomials

Binomials are expressions (often idiomatic) where two words are joined by a conjunction (usually 'and'). The order of the words is usually fixed. It is best to use them only in informal situations, with one or two exceptions.

odds and ends: small, unimportant things, e.g. Let's get the main things packed; we can do the **odds and ends** later.

give and take: a spirit of compromise, e.g. Every relationship needs a bit of **give and take** to be successful.

You can often tell something is a binomial because of the sound pattern.

Tears are **part and parcel** of growing up. [part of / belong to]

The boss was **ranting and raving** at us. [shouting / very angry]

The old cottage has gone to **rack and ruin**. [ruined/decayed]

He's so **prim and proper** at work. [rather formal and fussy]

The hotel was a bit **rough and ready**. [poor standard]

She has to **wine and dine** important clients. [entertain]

B

Other times, the clue is that the words are near-synonyms.

You can **pick and choose**; it's up to you. [have a wide choice]

My English is progressing in **leaps and bounds**. [big jumps]

It's nice to have some **peace and quiet**. [peace/calm]

The doctor recommended some **rest and recreation**. [relaxation]

First and foremost, you must work hard. [first / most importantly]

Many grammar words combine to form binomials.

There are cafés **here and there**. [scattered round]

We've had meetings **on and off**. [occasionally]

I've been running **back and forth** all day. [to and from somewhere]

To and fro can be used just like **back and forth**.

He is unemployed and **down and out**. [without a home or money]

She's better now, and **out and about** again. [going out]

She ran **up and down** the street. [in both directions]

Your language probably has many binomials. Make sure those which look similar in English have the same word order as your language. These four are very neutral binomials and can be used in formal or informal situations. Try translating them.

A **black and white** film, please. **Ladies and gentlemen**, your attention, please!

She ran **back and forth**. There was hot and cold water in every room.

E

Binomials linked by words other than **and**.

You've got your sweater on **back to front**. [the wrong way]

He won't help her; she'll have to **sink or swim**. [survive or fail]

Slowly but surely, I realised the boat was sinking. [gradually]

Sooner or later, you'll learn your lesson. [some time/day]

She didn't want to be just friends; it had to be **all or nothing**.

Well I'm sorry, that's all I can offer you; **take it or leave it**.

It's about the same distance as from here to Dublin, **give or take** a few miles. [perhaps a mile or two more, or a mile or two less]

Exercises

- 77.1** Here are some jumbled binomials (some are from the left-hand page and some are new). Using similarities in sound, join them with *and*. Then check opposite or in a dictionary that you have the word order right, and that you know the meaning.

prim dine high ruin rough dry
rack ready proper sound safe wine

Now use them to fill the gaps in these sentences.

- I was left and, with no-one to help me.
- The room's a bit and, but you're welcome to stay as long as you like.
- I'm glad you're and after such a dangerous journey.
- My hosts and me at the best restaurants.
- Our old house in the country has just gone to and; nobody looks after it now.
- The secretary is always so terribly and; the whole atmosphere always seems so very formal.

- 77.2** In the left-hand box below are the *first* words of some binomials. On the right are a selection of words, some of which you will need, and some you will not. Your task is to find a word on the right which can form a binomial with the left-hand word, as in the example *law and order*. Look for words that are either near-synonyms or antonyms (opposites) of the left-hand word.

law		money	tidy	drop
now		tired	soon	snow
hit		pay	bounds	terrible
clean	and	clocks	after	whisper
pick		order	then	dogs
sick		scratch	heart	choose
leaps		flowers	miss	chase

Now use them to make informal sentences by re-writing these.

- There are lots of courses. You can make your own selection.
- The flat looks all neat and spotless now for our visitors.
- I have had enough of traffic jams. I'm going to start using the train.
- Finding the right people was rather difficult; sometimes we succeeded, sometimes we failed.
- My knowledge of English has progressed rapidly since I've been using this book.
- The new Prime Minister promised that efficient policing would be the most important priority.
- I've seen her occasionally, taking her dog for a walk.

- 77.3** These binomials do not have *and* in the middle. What do they have? Check opposite or in a dictionary if you are not sure.

- | | | |
|----------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 Sooner later | 3 Back front | 5 Slowly surely |
| 2 All nothing | 4 Sink swim | 6 Make break |

78 Idioms describing people

A Positive and negative qualities

<i>positive</i>	<i>negative</i>
She has a heart of gold. [very kind, generous]	She's as hard as nails. [no sympathy for others]
He's as good as gold. [generous, helpful, well-behaved used generally for children]	He's rather a cold fish. [distant, unfriendly]

Note also:

He's such an awkward customer. [difficult person to deal with]
 She's a pain in the neck. Nobody likes her. [nuisance, difficult]
 He gets on everyone's nerves. [irritates everybody]

B People's 'fast' and 'slow' qualities

<i>fast</i>	<i>slow</i>
He's very quick off the mark; he always gets things before everybody else.	I was a bit slow off the mark; the job had been filled by the time I got the forms.
You've asked him to marry you! You're a fast worker! You only met him three weeks ago!	Come on! Hurry up! You're such a slow-coach!

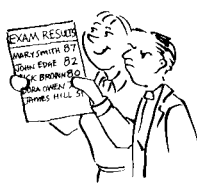
How people relate to the social norm

She's a bit of an odd-ball; very strange. [peculiar, strange]
 He's really over the top. [very exaggerated in behaviour]
 He's round the bend, if you ask me. [absolutely crazy/mad]
 My politics are very middle-of-the-road. [very normal; no radical ideas; neither left- nor
 right-wing]

Who's who in the class? Idioms for 'people in the classroom'



teacher's pet



Mary's top of
the class



a real know-all



a bit of a
big-head



a lazy-bones

The last three idioms are used of people outside of the class, too.

Exercises

78.1 Try to complete these idioms from memory if possible.

- 1 She does a lot of voluntary work; she has a heart...
- 2 Don't expect any sympathy from the boss; she's as hard...
- 3 I'm sure Gerry will help you; he's as good...
- 4 I was too late to get on that course; I was a bit slow...
- 5 You won't find him very friendly; he's rather a cold...
- 6 Tell him to hurry up! He's such a...

78.2 What do we call...

- 1 an irritating person who knows everything?
- 2 the person who is the teacher's favourite?
- 3 someone who thinks they are the best and says so?
- 4 the one who gets the best marks?
- 5 a person who is very lazy?

78.3 You can also learn idioms by associating them with a key word or words. For example, two idioms on the left-hand page had *gold* in them and two had *mark*. Which were they? Here is a work-fork based on *to have + head*. Use the expressions to finish the sentences below.

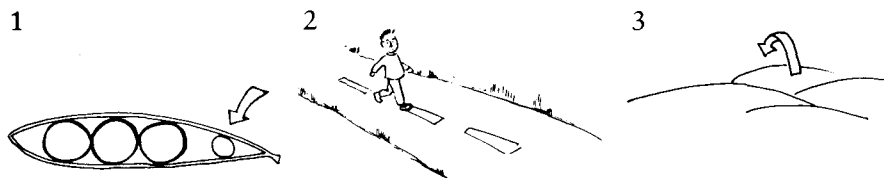
to have	—	one's head screwed on	[be sensible]
		a head for heights	[not suffer from vertigo]
		a head like a sieve	[bad memory; see Unit 76]
		a good head for figures	[be good at maths]
		one's head in the clouds	[unaware of reality]

- 1 I'd better write it in my notebook. I have...
- 2 Ask Martha to check those sums. She has...
- 3 Don't ask me to go up that tower. I'm afraid I don't...
- 4 She's very sensible and knows what she's doing. She...
- 5 He's quite out of touch with reality. He really...

Look out for other sets of idioms based on key words.

78.4 Mini-quiz. Which parts of your body might a difficult person (a) *get on* (b) *be a pain in*?

78.5 Which idioms do you think these drawings represent?



78.6 Try guessing from the context what the underlined idioms mean.

- 1 Don't get angry with him. His heart's in the right place.
- 2 Joe's a bit of a square peg in a round hole here. I think he should get a job which suits his character better.
- 3 A: Hey! I'm talking to you! B: Sorry, I was miles away.

79 Idioms describing feelings or mood

Positive feelings, moods and states

Jo's as happy as the day is long. [extremely content]
Mary seems to be on cloud nine these days. [extremely pleased/happy]
Everyone seemed to be in high spirits. [lively, enjoying things]
She seems to be keeping her chin up. [happy despite bad things]

B Negative feelings, moods and states

He had a face as long as a fiddle. [looked very depressed/sad]
She certainly looked down in the dumps. [looked depressed/sad]
Gerry is in a (black) mood. [a bad mood/temper]
Mark was like a bear with a sore head. [extremely irritable] (See Unit 76.)

Physical feelings and states

I could eat a horse! [very hungry]
I'm feeling all in. [exhausted]
You're looking a bit under the weather. [not very well / ill]
She looked, and felt, on top form. [in good physical condition]
I suddenly felt as if my head was going round. [dizzy]
I was almost at death's door last week! [very sick or ill]
Old Nora's as fit as a fiddle. [very fit indeed]

Fear/fright

She was scared stiff. [very scared]
She frightened the life out of him. [frightened him a lot]
We were all shaking in our shoes. [trembling with fear]
The poor lad was scared out of his wits. [very scared indeed]
I jumped out of my skin when I heard the bang. [gave a big jump]

Remember: there is an element of exaggeration in these idioms; they make comments on the situation and lighten the tone of what you are saying. So use them only informally.

E Horoscopes in English language newspapers and magazines are often a good place to find idioms about moods and states, since the horoscope usually tries to tell you how you are going to feel during the coming day/week/month. Look at these horoscopes and note the idioms in italics. Each one is given a literal paraphrase below the text. Collect more idioms from horoscopes if you can.

Capricorn (21.12–19.1)

*D*on't get carried away (1) by promises that won't be kept. Keep a cool head (2) and take everything as it comes. On the work front, things are looking better.

Taurus (21.4–20.5)

*S*omeone will say something that will make you swell with pride (3) and you may feel on top of the world (4) for a while, but the evening will not be so easy.

(1) be fooled (2) stay calm (3) feel very proud (4) very happy indeed

Exercises

- 79.1** Here are some more idioms that can be grouped as expressing either *positive* or *negative* feelings. Try to group them using a dictionary if necessary.

to be over the moon to feel/be a bit down
to feel/be as pleased as Punch to feel/be browned off

- 79.2** Using the idioms from 79.1 and from A opposite, say how you would probably feel if...

- 1 you were told you had just won a vast sum of money. *I'd be over the moon!*
- 2 your boss said you had to do again a piece of work you'd already done three times.
- 3 you were told you'd got a very high mark in an exam.
- 4 you had a bad toothache and your neighbour was making a lot of noise late at night.
- 5 nothing seemed to have gone right for you that day.
- 6 someone you were secretly in love with told you they were in love with you.

- 79.3** Complete the idioms in these sentences.

- 1 Don't creep up behind me like that! You frightened the...
- 2 I don't need a doctor, I just feel a bit under...
- 3 As long as he has his car to work on, he's as happy...
- 4 Last year, when I won that medal, I really was on...
- 5 I wasn't expecting such a loud bang; I nearly jumped...
- 6 I've had nothing since lunch; I could...
- 7 I feel a bit down this week; last week I felt on top...

- 79.4** Spot idioms to do with feelings, moods and states in these horoscopes. Underline them, then check the meaning if necessary in a dictionary.

Scorpio (23.10–22.11)

You may get itchy feet today, but be patient, this is not a good time to travel. Events at work will keep you on the edge of your seat for most of the day. Altogether an anxious time for Scorpions.

Leo (21.7–21.8)

You'll be up in arms over something someone close to you says rather thoughtlessly today, but don't let it spoil things. You may be in two minds over an invitation, but think positively.

Now use the idioms to rewrite these sentences.

- 1 I can't decide about that job in Paris.
- 2 I've been in suspense all day. What's happened? Tell me!
- 3 Her son became restless to travel and went off to Uruguay.
- 4 Everyone protested loudly when they cancelled the outing.

- 79.5** Which idioms opposite include the words *head*, *wits*, *swell*, *black* and *carried*? Write a sentence using each one.

80 Idioms connected with problematic situations

A

Problems and difficulties

idiom

literal phrase

- | | | |
|-------------------------|---|--|
| to be in a fix | = | be in difficulty |
| to be in a tight corner | = | be in a situation that is hard to get out of |
| to be in a muddle | = | be confused/mixed up |
- (these three go together as all having be + in + a)

Reacting in situations

Three pairs of more or less opposite idioms.

- | | | |
|---|---|--|
| to take a back seat
[not do anything; let others act instead] | ⌘ | to take the bull by the horns
[act positively to face and attack the problem] |
| to stir things up
[do/say things that make matters worse] | ⌘ | to pour oil on troubled waters
[do/say things that calm the situation down] |
| to keep one's cards close to one's chest
[hold back information] | ⌘ | to lay one's cards on the table
[be very open, state exactly what your position is] |

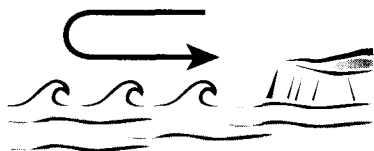
B

Idioms related to situations based on get

- This has to be done by next week; we must **get our act together** before it's too late.
[organise ourselves to respond; informal]
- We need a proper investigation to **get to the bottom of things**. [find the true explanation for the state of affairs]
- It's quite difficult to **get people to sit up and take notice**. [make them pay attention]
- I'm trying to **get a grasp of what's happening**; it's not easy. [find out / understand]

C

Changes and stages in situations



The tide has turned for us;
better days are ahead.

I'm afraid we've just come to a **dead end** with our plans.
I think I've reached a **turning-point** in my career.



We can see light at the end
of the tunnel at last.

D

Some idioms connected with easing the situation

- The government and the unions have **buried the hatchet** for the time being. [made peace / stopped fighting each other]
- All that trouble last year was just **swept under the carpet** in the end. [ignored / deliberately forgotten, without solving it]
- You should say sorry. It **would go a long way**. [would help a lot]

Exercises

- 80.1** When looking up idioms (or any type of words) in your dictionary, it is often a good idea to look at what is just before and just after the information you are looking for. In this way you can pick up some related words and/or expressions which you can record together.

For example, if you look up *take the bull by the horns* in a dictionary, you will probably also find these idioms:

(to *belact*) *like a bull in a china shop* [be very clumsy]

(to *talk*) *a load of bull* [talk nonsense]

Look up these idioms using the words underlined as your key word and see what other idioms or useful phrases you can find around them in the dictionary.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1 let the <u>cat</u> out of the bag | 3 to <u>pour</u> oil on troubled waters |
| 2 be in a <u>fix</u> | 4 to <u>stir</u> things up |

- 80.2** Choose a suitable idiom from the opposite page to fill the gaps.

- 1 I think I'll just and let everyone else get on with sorting matters out.
- 2 No, please, don't say anything; you'll only
- 3 It's been a long, hard struggle, but I think at last we can see
- 4 The police are trying their best to get to, but it's a real mystery at the moment.
- 5 I'm sorry, I'm in; could you explain that again?
- 6 At last I've managed to get him to sit; he's done nothing at all for us so far.
- 7 I find it difficult to get a this global warming business, don't you?
- 8 I think we should take the bull and sort it out. I don't think it should be just swept

- 80.3** Here are some more idioms connected with situations. From the context, can you paraphrase their meaning, as in the example?

- 1 It's not working; we'll have to go back to square one. *go back to the beginning again*
- 2 The teachers want one thing, the students want the exact opposite. I'm sure we can find a happy medium.
- 3 We were on tenterhooks all night waiting for news from the hospital. They finally rang us at 6.30 a.m.
- 4 Poverty and crime go hand in hand in this part of town.
- 5 You've been in a lot of trouble lately; you'd better toe the line from now on.

- 80.4** What *questions* could be asked to get these answers?

- 1 Well, we've buried the hatchet for the moment, but I'm sure it's not for good.
- 2 Yes, it's been a real turning-point in my career.
- 3 Yes, I think it would go a long way. You know how sensitive he is, and how he appreciates little gestures.

81 Idioms connected with praise and criticism

Idioms connected with praise

Saying people/things are better than the rest

Mary is head and shoulders above the rest of the girls. *or* She's miles better than the other girls. [used usually of people]

When it comes to technology, Japan is streets ahead of most other countries. [can be used of people or things]

When it comes to exam passes, St John's school usually knocks spots off the other schools. [used of people or things]

That meal was just out of this world. [outstanding/superb; usually used of things]

Saying people are good at something

Some expressions with idiomatic compound nouns, noun-phrases and compound adjectives.

She's a dab-hand at carpentry, just like her father. [usually for manual skills]

She's a really first-rate / top notch administrator, the very best.

When it comes to grammar, she's really on the ball. [knows a lot]

Bill has a way with foreign students. The other teachers envy him. [good at establishing good relations / motivating them, etc.]

Marjorie really has green fingers; look at those flowers! [good at gardening]

Let him do the talking; he's got the gift of the gab. [good at talking]

Idioms connected with criticism

Note: There are far more of these in common use than ones connected with praise!

You can group some according to form; for example, 's idioms include several connected with criticising people and things.

She thinks she's the cat's whiskers / the bee's knees. [thinks she's wonderful]

He was dressed up like a dog's dinner [over-dressed in a showy way]

When it comes to time-keeping, he's the world's worst. [no-one is worse]

I'm sorry, this essay of yours is a dog's breakfast. [a mess / very badly done]

This group could be learned in association with 'food' words.

When it comes to unreliability, he really takes the biscuit. [is the epitome / most striking example of some negative quality] (See Unit 74.)

Mary wants to have her cake and eat it! [wants everything without any contribution from her side]

I think he's just trying to butter me up. [give false praise in order to get something]

A pay-rise and a company car! You want jam on it, you do! [have totally unreasonable expectations/demands]

Note these idiomatic synonyms of the verb to criticise:

You shouldn't run down your own country when you're abroad.

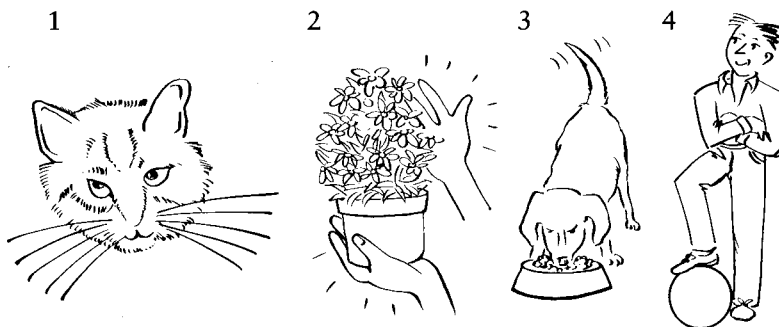
Why do you always have to pick holes in everything I say?

Exercises

81.1 Using idioms from A opposite, rewrite these sentences without changing the basic meaning.

- 1 The hotel we were staying in was absolutely superb.
- 2 Joe is a long way above the other kids when it comes to doing hard sums.
- 3 This restaurant is much, much better than all the other restaurants in town.
- 4 You're a long way ahead of me in understanding all this new technology; I'm impressed.

81.2 Which idioms opposite might these pictures help you to remember?



81.3 Which of the expressions in 81.2 is most suitable for:

- 1 praising someone's knowledge/ability in their profession?
- 2 saying that something is a real mess?
- 3 saying someone has a very high opinion of themselves?
- 4 praising someone's gardening skills?

81.4 Express the *opposite* meaning to these sentences using idioms from the left-hand page.

Example: He's a third-rate athlete. He's a first-rate (or top-notch) athlete.

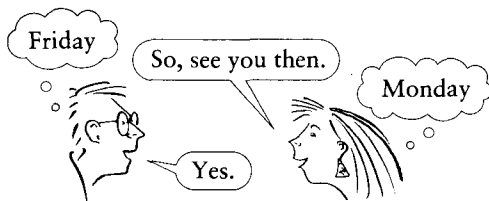
- 1 She was dressed beautifully, just right for the occasion.
- 2 Penny has such an inferiority complex.
- 3 She's hopeless at DIY; just look at those bookshelves she made.
- 4 He is no good at talking to people at all.
- 5 Mick doesn't get on with the secretaries; just look at how they react when he wants something done.
- 6 He wants a new office, a secretary and a new computer. But compared to what Geoff wants he isn't expecting much!
- 7 She said I was the best boss they'd ever had. It was obvious she was praising me sincerely. I wonder what she wants?
- 8 He often says how wonderful his school is.
- 9 She always praises everything I say.

81.5 Using a good general dictionary or a special dictionary of idioms, see what further idioms you can find that include the 'food' words listed below and which are used in contexts of praising or criticising people/things/actions. Make sentences with the expressions.

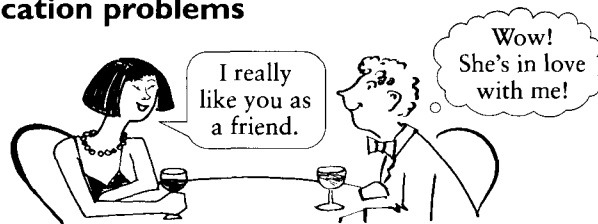
- 1 ham 2 tea 3 icing 4 nut 5 onion 6 cream

82 Idioms connected with using language

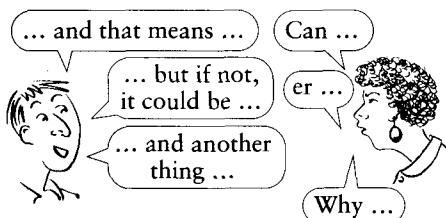
Idioms connected with communication problems



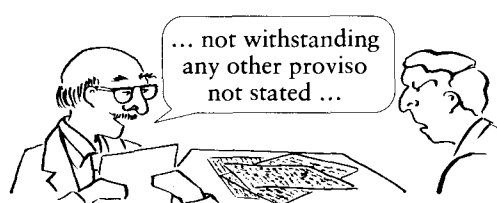
They're talking at cross-purposes.



He's got the wrong end of the stick.



She can't get a word in edgeways.



I can't make head or tail of what he's saying.

Good talk, bad talk

The boss always **talks down** to us. [talks as if we were inferior]

My work-mates are always **talking behind my back**. [saying negative things about me when I'm not there]

It was just **small talk**, nothing more, I promise. [purely social talk, nothing serious]

Let's sit somewhere else; they always **talk shop** over lunch, and it bores me rigid. [talk about work]

Hey! Your new friend's become a real **talking-point** among the staff! Did you know? [subject that everyone wants to talk about]

It's gone too far this time. I shall have to give him a **talking to**. [reproach/scold him]

Talk in discussions, meetings, etc.



1 start the discussion

2 say exactly what I think

3 say it in few words

4 say things in a long, indirect way

5 finish the discussion

6 say stupid things

7 come to the important part of the matter

8 say intelligent, reasonable things

Exercises

82.1 Look at these dialogues and comment on them, as in the example.

Example: A: £98 for a meal! that's outrageous!

B: Not the meal, you twit! The room!

They seem to be talking at cross-purposes.

1 JOE: So that's what I'm going to do, take it all away.

ANN: What about –

JOE: And if they don't like it they can just go and do what they like.

ANN: If she –

JOE: Not that I have to consult them, anyway, I'm in charge round here.

ANN: I wonder whether it –

JOE: You see, I'm the kind of person who can take a hard decision when it's needed.

It seems that Ann can't get

2 MICK: I got very upset when you said I was childish.

GRACE: I didn't, honestly! All I said was that you seemed to get on very well with the children. Honestly.

MICK: Oh, I see. Oh, sorry.

It seems that Mick got the

3 DAN: So, area-wise the down-matching sales profile commitment would seem to be high-staked on double-par.

REG: Eh? Could you say that again? You've got me there.

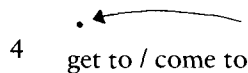
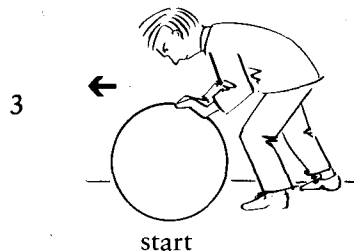
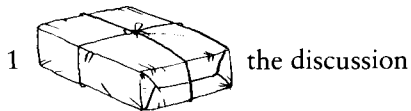
It seems that Reg can't make

4 MADGE: I don't expect someone with your intelligence to understand this document.

ERIC: Thank you.

Madge seems to be talking

82.2 What idioms opposite do these drawings represent?



82.3 Fill the gaps to complete the collocations.

1 She is very direct and always her mind.

2 I get bored with small; let's get down to serious matters. I'm in love with you.

3 The boss gave me a real to after that stupid mistake I made. Still, I was in the wrong.

4 You're behind the times! Darren's girlfriend was *last week's*-point.

83 Idioms – miscellaneous

Idioms connected with paying, buying and selling

He bought a real pig in a poke when he got that car. [buy something without examining it properly first]

We'll probably have to pay over the odds for a hotel room during the week of the festival. [pay more than the usual rate]

He did £600 worth of damage to the car and his parents had to foot the bill. [pay up, usually a large amount]

That restaurant was a real rip-off. or That taxi-driver really ripped us off. [made us pay much too much; very informal]

If I were you I'd drive a hard bargain. She's desperate to buy a flat and wants yours. [ask a lot and resist lowering the price]

See also nose on the human body below.

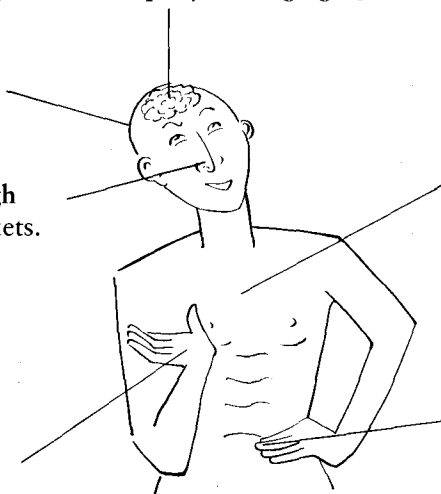
B Idioms based on names of the parts of the body

I've got that song on the brain!
[just can't stop myself singing it]

He's made quite a bit of headway with his maths lately.
[make progress]

We had to pay through the nose for those tickets.
[pay a huge amount]

You've got to hand it to her; she's a great singer.
[acknowledge/admit]



I hope you didn't mind me telling you. I just had to get it off my chest.
[tell something that's been bothering you a lot]

Oh, he's got a finger in every pie.
[is involved in many different things]

C Idioms connected with daily routine

Come on! Rise and shine! We've got to leave! [a command to someone to get up, often said to someone who doesn't want to and at a very early hour]. There's no time for breakfast. We can get a bite to eat on the motorway [have a snack or meal]. I'll drive and you can have a nap in the back seat [a short sleep]. When we get there, there'll just be time to freshen up before the meeting. [wash and tidy oneself]. It's going to be a long day; I'll be ready to crash out about 8 o'clock, I should think [be very tired/ready to sleep almost anywhere]. Still, we can stay home the following evening and put our feet up [relax], and just watch the box [watch television].

Exercises

83.1 Look at these mini-dialogues and decide which idiom from the opposite page you could use to answer the questions.

- 1 A: I'll give you \$85.
 B: No, \$100 or nothing.
 A: Oh, come on. Look, \$90, there.
 B: No, I said \$100 and I mean \$100.

What's B doing?

- 2 A: I'm president of the squash club, I'm on the teacher-parent committee and I run three youth clubs.
 B: Really?
 A: Yes, oh, and I'm on that working party at the Social Centre, and there's the Union...

What sort of person could A be described as?

- 3 A: 'Lady in red, la-da-da-di-da...'
 B: I wish you'd stop singing that blasted song!
 A: What? Oh, sorry... 'Lady in red, la-la ...'

What's A's problem?

- 4 A: Oh, no! You know that box of wine glasses I bought from that guy in the street? Half of them are cracked!
 B: Well, you should have looked at them first. It's your stupid fault.

What has A done?

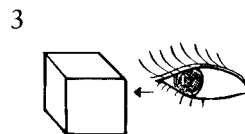
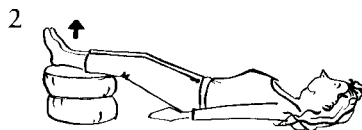
83.2 Rewrite these sentences using an idiom instead of the underlined bits.

- 1 Can I tell you about a problem I have? I just have to tell somebody. It's been bothering me for a while now.
 2 They charged us £100 for a tiny room without a bath. It was just robbery!
 3 There'll just be time to have a quick meal before the show.
 4 I must admit, Maria coped with the situation brilliantly.
 5 I think I'll just go upstairs and have a sleep for a while, if nobody objects.
 6 Well, I was very tired and fell asleep on the sofa at about two o'clock, and the party was still in full swing.

83.3 Can you think of a situation where you might...

- 1 have to get a bite to eat on the way?
 2 have to pay over the odds for a hotel room?
 3 find it hard to make any headway?
 4 be willing to pay through the nose for tickets?

83.4 Which idioms do these drawings suggest?



Follow-up: Look up idioms under further parts of the body, for example, *tongue*, *heels*, *toe*, *back*, and make a note of examples.

84 Proverbs

Speakers tend to use proverbs to comment on a situation, often at the end of a true story someone has told, or in response to some event. As with all idiomatic expressions, they are useful and enjoyable to know and understand, but should be used with care.

A

Warnings/advice/morals – do's and don'ts

<i>proverb</i>		<i>paraphrase</i>
Don't count your chickens before they're hatched.	→	Don't anticipate the future too much.
Don't put all your eggs in one basket.	→	Don't invest all your efforts, or attention in just one thing.
Never judge a book by its cover.	→	Don't judge people/things by their outward appearance.
Never look a gift horse in the mouth.	→	Never refuse good fortune when it is there in front of you.
Take care of the pence and the pounds will take care of themselves.	→	Take care of small sums of money and they will become large sums.

B

Key elements

Proverbs can also be grouped by some key elements, for example, animals and birds.

When the cat's away, the mice will play. [people will take advantage of someone else's absence to behave more freely]

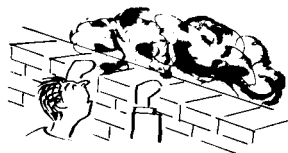
You can lead a horse to water but you can't make it drink. [you can try to persuade someone, but you can't force them]

One swallow doesn't make a summer. [one positive sign does not mean all will be well]

C

Visualising

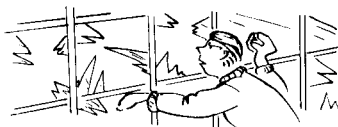
As with learning all vocabulary, visualising some element often helps.



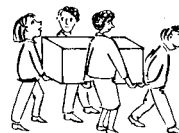
There's no smoke without fire. [rumours are usually based on some degree of truth]



Too many cooks spoil the broth. [too many people interfering is a bad way of doing things]



People who live in glass houses shouldn't throw stones. [don't criticise others' faults if you suffer from them yourself]



Many hands make light work. [a lot of people helping makes a job easier]

Exercises

84.1 Find proverbs on the left-hand page which would be suitable for these situations.

Example: Someone says they have just been offered a free two-week holiday, but are hesitating whether to take up the offer. *Never look a gift-horse in the mouth.*

- 1 Someone thanks you and your friends for helping to load heavy boxes into a van.
- 2 Someone says they can't be bothered applying to different universities and will just apply to one.
- 3 Three different people have made different arrangements for the same meeting, and so everyone comes at different times and the result is total confusion.

84.2 Some proverbs are similar in meaning to one another. Which proverbs on the left go with which on the right, and what do they have in common in terms of meaning?

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 A bird in the hand
is worth two in the bush. | Never judge a book by its cover. |
| 2 Don't count your chickens
before they are hatched. | Familiarity breeds contempt. |
| 3 All that glitters is not gold. | Never look a gift-horse in the mouth. |
| 4 Absence makes the heart
grow fonder. | Don't cross your bridges
before you come to them. |

84.3 In spoken language, people often refer to proverbs by only saying half of them and leaving the rest for the listener to 'fill in'. Complete the proverbs in these dialogues.

- 1 A: 'Joel's always criticising people who are selfish, yet he's terribly selfish himself.
B: Yes, well, people who live in glass houses...
C: Exactly.
- 2 A: The people in the office have been playing computer games all day since the boss fell ill.
B: Well, you know what they say: when the cat's away...
A: Right, and they're certainly doing that.
- 3 A: I didn't believe those rumours about Nick and Gill, but apparently they are seeing each other.
B: You shouldn't be so naive, you know what they say, no smoke..., eh?
A: Mm, I suppose you're right.
- 4 A: Amazing, he's made a fortune from just one little shop!
B: Well, I think it's a case of take care of the pence...
A: Sure, he's always been very careful with his money.

Follow-up: Try translating some proverbs from your language, word for word into English, and then, if you can, ask a native speaker if they recognise any English proverb as having the same or similar meaning.

85 Expressions with do and make

The next seven units deal with phrasal verbs and other expressions based on common verbs. Phrasal verbs are basic verbs which can combine with different prepositions (or particles) to make verbs with completely new – and often unguessable – meanings. Phrasal verbs are used more in speaking than in writing. There is almost always a more formal way of conveying the same idea. In this unit we look at phrasal verbs formed from **do** and **make**.

Here are some of the most useful phrasal verbs based on **do** and **make**.

<i>phrasal verb</i>	<i>meaning</i>	<i>example</i>
do with	need, want	I could do with something to eat.
do without	manage without	We'll have to do without a holiday this year as money is so short.
do away with	abolish	Slavery was not done away with until last century.
do out of	prevent from having (by deceit)	He did me out of my rightful inheritance.
make for	move in the direction of	Let's make for the city centre and find a restaurant on the way.
make of	think (opinion)	What do you make of him?
make off	leave hurriedly	He made off as soon as he heard their car turn into the drive.
make up for	compensate for	The superb food at the hotel made up for the uncomfortable rooms.
make up to	be nice to in order to get s.t.	He made up to her until she agreed to help.

Some phrasal verbs have a number of different meanings; **do up** can mean not only 'fasten' but also 'renovate' and 'put into a bundle'. Similarly, **make out** can mean 'claim', 'manage to see' and 'understand' as well as 'write' or 'complete'; **make up** can mean 'compose' or 'invent'; it can also mean 'constitute' or 'form', 'put cosmetics on', 'prepare by mixing together various ingredients' and 'make something more numerous or complete'.

There are a lot of other common expressions based on **do** and **make**.

You **do**: the housework / some gardening / the washing-up / homework / your best / the shopping / the cooking / business with..., and so on.

You **make**: arrangements / an agreement / a suggestion / a decision / a cup of tea / war / an attempt / a phone call / the best of... / an effort / an excuse / a mistake / a bed / a profit / a loss / love / the most of / a noise / a good or bad impression / a success of... / a point of... / allowances for... / a gesture / a face / fun of... / a fuss of... / a go (a success) of..., and so on.

The more collocations with **do** and **make** you learn, the more you will get a 'feel' for the difference between the two verbs.

Exercises

- 85.1** Here are some different ways in which *do up*, *make up* and *make out* can be used. What is the meaning of the phrasal verb in each case?
- 1 Take this prescription to the chemist and she'll make it up for you.
 - 2 Can you make out the little grey house on the shore?
 - 3 A human being is made up of many, often conflicting, desires.
 - 4 If you do up the newspapers, I'll take them to be recycled.
 - 5 I find it impossible to make Jo out.
 - 6 Let's advertise the talk in the hope of making up the numbers a bit.
 - 7 He made out that he had never loved anyone else.
 - 8 We're planning to do up our bathroom at the weekend.
- 85.2** Add the necessary prepositions or particles to complete this story.
- Last weekend we decided to start doing (1) our bedroom. We agreed that we could do (2) the old fireplace in the corner. As we began to remove it from the wall we found some old pictures done (3) in a bundle behind a loose brick. At first we could not make (4) what was in the pictures but we wiped them clean and realised they all depicted the same young man. We spent an enjoyable evening making (5) stories to explain why the pictures had been hidden.
- 85.3** Correct the mistakes in the sentences below. Either the wrong preposition has been used or the word order is wrong.
- 1 This weekend we are planning to make the seaside for.
 - 2 Vast amounts of money do not always make of happiness.
 - 3 He makes up for anyone he thinks can help him.
 - 4 Your shoelaces are untied. Do up them or you'll trip.
 - 5 They like to make away that they have important connections.
- 85.4** Write word forks (see Unit 2) to help you learn the meanings of *make up*, *make out*, *do with* and *do up*.
- 85.5** Divide the expressions in D opposite into any groups which will help you to learn them.
- 85.6** Complete the following sentences using an appropriate expression from D.
- 1 Pacifist posters in the 1960s used to say 'MAKE LOVE NOT!'
 - 2 It doesn't matter if you pass or not as long as you do
 - 3 Though many companies are going bankrupt, ours made a huge
 - 4 Mrs Thatcher said she could do Mr Gorbachev.
 - 5 You must make the fact that he's only seven years old.
 - 6 Dressing smartly for an interview helps you to make
- 85.7** Choose ten phrasal verbs and other expressions from the opposite page that you particularly want to learn and write a paragraph using them.

86 Expressions with bring and take

Here are some common phrasal verbs with **bring**. Each is exemplified in a typical spoken sentence and a more formal equivalent is provided in brackets.

- I was **brought up** in the country. [raise]
- Don't give up. I'm sure you'll **bring** it off. [succeed]
- Cold winds always **bring on** her cough. [cause to start]
- The strike **brought about** a change of government. [cause to happen]
- I hope they don't **bring back** capital punishment. [re-introduce]
- They promised to **bring down** taxes but have they? [lower]
- Inflation will **bring down** the government. [destroy, remove from power]
- Ford are **bringing out** an interesting new model in the spring. [introduce]
- Keep at it and you'll **bring him round** to your point of view. [persuade]

Here are some common phrasal verbs with **take**.

- Doesn't he **take after** his father! [resemble]
- I wish I could **take back** what I said to her. [withdraw]
- I find it very hard to **take in** his lectures. [absorb, understand]
- She was completely **taken in** by him. [deceive]
- Sales have really **taken off** now. [start to improve]
- The plane **took off** two hours late. [left the ground]
- She's very good at **taking off** her teacher. [imitate]
- We'll have to **take on** more staff if we're to **take on** more work. [employ; undertake]
- She **took to** him at once. [form an immediate liking for]
- When did you **take up** golf? [start (a hobby)]

Here are some other common idioms with **bring** and **take**.

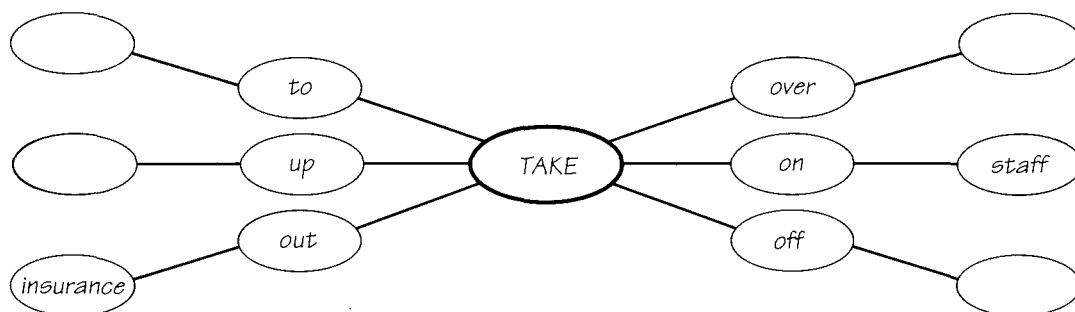
- The new regulations will be **brought into force** in May... [become law]
- His research **brought** some very interesting facts **to light**. [revealed]
- Matters were **brought** to a head when Pat was sacked. [reached a point where changes had to be made]
- It's better that everything should be **brought into the open**. [made public]
- His new girlfriend has really **brought out the best** in him. [been good for him]
- Don't let him **take advantage** of you. [unfairly use superiority]
- After 20 years of marriage they **take** each other **for granted**. [don't appreciate each other's qualities]
- I **took it for granted** you'd come. [assumed]
- She immediately **took control** of the situation. [started organising]
- His words **took my breath away**. [surprised]
- She loves **taking care** of small children. [looking after, caring for]
- We **took part in** a demonstration last Saturday. [participated]
- The story **takes place** in Mexico. [happens]
- He doesn't seem to **take pride in** his work. [draw satisfaction from]
- Mother always **takes everything in her stride**. [copes calmly]

Exercises

86.1 Complete these sentences with the appropriate preposition.

- 1 The new school reforms which plan to bring regular exams for young children are generally unpopular.
- 2 The long journey brought labour and the baby was born on the bus.
- 3 I think the strikes will bring some changes in management.
- 4 If anyone can bring it, he can.
- 5 He won't agree to it for me but she can always bring him
- 6 She brought six children all on her own.

86.2 The diagram below can be called a ripple diagram. Can you complete it?



86.3 Reword these sentences using expressions from C opposite.

- 1 The story of the film happens in Casablanca during the war.
- 2 Today's newspaper has revealed some fascinating information about the Prime Minister.
- 3 The situation reached crisis point when the union called for a strike.
- 4 How does she always manage to be so calm about things?
- 5 The view from the place was astonishing.
- 6 He capitalised on her weakness at the time and she sold it to him.
- 7 The main function of a nurse is to look after the sick.
- 8 You shouldn't assume that anyone or anything will always be the same.

86.4 Reply to these questions using one of the phrasal verbs in A or B opposite.

- 1 What is the Conservative Party promising in its manifesto?
- 2 How did you like her?
- 3 What causes your rash?
- 4 Who does your little boy resemble?
- 5 Have you any special hobbies?
- 6 How's your new business doing?
- 7 What is a mimic?
- 8 Do you think you'll manage to persuade him to let you come?

86.5 Make up a ripple diagram like the one in 86.2, based on phrasal verbs with *bring*.

86.6 Which of the expressions in C mean the opposite of:

- | | | |
|-----------------|----------------------|------------------------|
| 1 to keep quiet | 3 to disregard | 5 to be careless about |
| 2 to look on | 4 to drop an old law | 6 to be subordinate to |

87 Expressions with get

Get seems to be used all the time in spoken English. It has the following basic meanings:

- receive, obtain or buy something, e.g. Please get me a newspaper when you're in town; I got a letter from John today; She got top marks in her exam.
- show a change in position – move or be moved, e.g. How are you **getting** home tonight?
- show a change in state – become or make, e.g. We are all **getting** older if not wiser.

Get also has a number of other more specific meanings.

It's my turn to **get** dinner tonight. [prepare a meal]

I don't **get** it. Why did he speak like that? [understand]

His behaviour really **gets** me at times. [annoy]

C The table below shows just some of the phrasal verbs based on get.

<i>phrasal verb</i>	<i>meaning</i>	<i>example</i>
get at	reach, find	I hope the enquiry will get at the truth.
get away with	do something wrong without being caught	The robbers got away with several thousand pounds.
get behind	fail to produce something at the right time	I've got terribly behind with my work.
get by	manage (financially)	We could never get by on my salary alone.
get down	depress	This weather is really getting me down.
get down to	begin to give serious attention to	It's time you got down to some work.
get on	manage	However will we get on without you?
get on	advance, develop	Jo is getting on very well at school now.
get out of	avoid a responsibility	I'll try and get out of my lesson tomorrow.
get over	recover from	She's getting over a bad attack of flu.
get round	spread	The rumour soon got round the whole village.
get through	come to a successful end	What a relief that she got through all her exams!
get through	use up all of	He got through his month's salary in just one weekend.
get up to	to do (especially something bad)	They're very quiet. I wonder what they're getting up to?

D Here are some other expressions based on get.

You seem to have **got out of bed on the wrong side** today. [be in a bad mood]

The meeting **got off to a good/bad start** with JR's speech. [started well/badly]

I'm organising a little **get-together**. I hope you can come. [informal meeting/party]

When their relationship ended he **got rid of** everything that reminded him of her. [threw away, destroyed]

I'm going to **get my own back** on her somehow. [take my revenge]

Exercises

- 87.1** There are a lot of instances of *get* in this text. Replace them all with another way of conveying the same idea. Notice that by doing this you are changing the text from something very informal to something slightly more formal.

I don't often get interesting advertising circulars these days. However, quite an unusual one came this morning. It was headed 'Are you worried about getting out of touch?' And it went on, 'If so, get some of our special tablets today. Taking just one in the morning will help you get on well at work and at home. It will stop little problems from getting you down and will ensure that you get rich and successful with the minimum of effort on your behalf. Send just \$25 today and you will get your tablets and your key to success within ten days.'

- 87.2** Fill in the blanks in the sentences below in the most appropriate way.

- 1 Although they had only told their parents about their engagement, the news soon got the village.
- 2 She must have made a good impression last week because she has got to the second round of interviews for the post.
- 3 I love watching TV cookery programmes but when they describe a recipe, it can be hard to get all the details in time.
- 4 We get only because we live very economically.
- 5 What have you been getting since we last met?
- 6 Surely you haven't got all the biscuits already?

- 87.3** Match the situations in list A with the appropriate expressions in list B.

- A
- 1 Someone has been very impolite to one of your friends. **4**
 - 2 Someone is about to throw something away...
 - 3 Someone is being very bad-tempered. **4**
 - 4 Someone has done something very unkind to you. **2**
 - 5 A good friend is leaving.
- B
- 1 I don't know how we'll get by without you!
 - 2 You wait! I'll get my own back on you one day!
 - 3 Don't get rid of that yet!
 - 4 You got out of bed on the wrong side this morning!
 - 5 Your rudeness really gets me!

- 87.4** Complete the following sentences in any appropriate way.

- 1 I should hate to get rid of...
- 2 The dinner got off to a bad start when...
- 3 I find it very hard to get down to...
- 4 I wish I could get out of...
- 5 I don't think she has got over...
- 6 ...is really getting me down.

- 87.5** There are a number of other common phrasal verbs and expressions based on *get* not listed on the opposite page. Write example sentences using any that you can think of.

88 Expressions with set and put

Look at the examples of following phrasal verbs based on set.

- You should **set aside** some money for a rainy day. [reserve]
- He tried to **set aside** his dislike of his daughter's fiancé. [ignore (not think about)]
- We should **set off** before dawn to get there on time. [begin a journey]
- The redundancies **set off** strikes throughout the area. [cause]
- The bank helps people wanting to **set up** business. [establish]
- He **set out** to climb Everest. [begin work with a particular aim in mind]

Here are some of the many phrasal verbs with put.

- He **put** his own name forward to the committee. [propose]
- He's good at **putting** his ideas across. [communicate to others]
- Please **put away** all your toys at once. [tidy]
- He is always **putting** her down. [make someone look small]
- We had central heating **put in** last year. [install]
- I'm going to **put in** an application for that job. [submit]
- Every now and then she would **put in** a remark. [interject]
- They've **put off** making their decision for another week. [postpone]
- Her sniffing really **puts** me off my dinner. [discourage]
- The school is **putting** Hamlet on next year. [present]
- He's good at **putting on** all sorts of accents. [pretend to have]
- The fireman quickly **put out** the fire. [extinguish]
- Please don't let me **put you out**. [inconvenience]
- You're not allowed to **put up** posters here. [fix]
- I can **put you up** for the weekend. [give accommodation to]
- The government is sure to **put up** taxes soon. [raise]
- How do you **put up with** such rudeness? [tolerate]

Here are some more expressions with set.

- He has **set his heart/sights on** becoming a ballet dancer. [longs to become (an important aim/goal)]
- They sat up till the small hours **setting the world to rights**. [discussing important problems]
- Did someone **set fire to** the house deliberately? [put a match to]
- The house was **set on fire** by a match thrown onto some old newspapers. [ignited]
- Di had never **set foot in** Italy before. [been to]
- Jill is very **set in** her ways. [fixed in her habits]
- Try to **set a good example**. [be a good example for others]

Notice also the following common expressions with put.

- to **put your foot down**: to be firm about something
- to **put all your eggs in one basket**: to risk all you have on a single venture
- to **put your mind to**: to direct all your thoughts towards
- to **put two and two together**: to draw an obvious conclusion
- to **put something in a nutshell**: to state something accurately and in a few words only
- to **put someone's back up**: to irritate someone
- a **put-up job**: something arranged to give a false impression

Exercises

88.1 Put the following sentences into slightly more formal English by replacing the phrasal verbs with their formal equivalents.

- 1 They have recently set up a committee on teenage smoking.
- 2 We try to set aside some money for our holiday every week.
- 3 Set aside all your negative feelings and listen with an open mind.
- 4 If we hadn't set off so late, we would have arrived on time.
- 5 The government's unpopular proposals set off a wave of protests.

88.2 Write down three nouns which could follow each of the verbs. Remember that their meanings might be different depending on the noun which follows.

Example: put in money / a comment / a telephone system

- | | | | |
|---------------|--------------|----------|---------------|
| 1 put out | 3 put off | 5 put up | 7 put away |
| 2 put forward | 4 put across | 6 put on | 8 put up with |

88.3 Complete the responses to the following statements or questions using any appropriate phrasal verb from A or B opposite.

Example: He's always so rude. I wouldn't put up with it if I were you.

- 1 How should we publicise our play?
- 2 This room is in a terrible mess.
- 3 What time do we have to leave for the airport tomorrow?
- 4 Any chance of a bed on your floor this weekend?
- 5 Why have you suddenly lost interest in the project?
- 6 What is Geoff planning to do when he gets his business degree?

88.4 Using the expressions in C and D opposite, reword the following sentences without changing their meaning.

- 1 He never wants to do anything in a new or different way.
- 2 He's bound to draw the obvious conclusion if you keep on behaving like that.
- 3 Her aim is to become Prime Minister.
- 4 I find her terribly irritating.
- 5 It's sound business advice not to risk everything at once.
- 6 Please concentrate on the problem in hand.
- 7 She is determined to get a seat in Parliament.
- 8 She threw petrol on the rubbish and put a match to it.
- 9 She's very good at stating things succinctly.
- 10 The building started burning because of terrorist action.
- 11 This is the first time I've ever been to the southern hemisphere.
- 12 We spent most of our evenings discussing the problems of the world rather than studying.
- 13 You really should be firm with him or there'll be trouble later.
- 14 If the teacher doesn't behave properly, the children certainly won't.

88.5 Choose ten of the phrasal verbs and other expressions with *set* and *put* which you particularly want to learn and write them down in example sentences of your own.

89 Expressions with come and go

A

Here are some phrasal verbs based on come.

- Did the meeting you were planning ever **come off**? [take place]
- I don't think his jokes ever quite **come off**. [succeed]
- When do the exam results **come out**? [be published, made public]
- The mark on the carpet won't **come out**. [be removed]
- An important point **came up** at the meeting. [was raised]
- Please **come round** and see me sometime. [pay an informal visit]
- Nothing can **come between** him and football. [separate; be a barrier between]
- I **came across** a lovely old vase in that junk shop. [found by chance]
- How did you **come by** that bruise / that car? [receive, obtain]

B

Notice the large number of expressions with **come to** (usually with an idea of arriving at) and **come into** (often with an idea of starting). Where the meaning isn't obvious, help is given in brackets.

- come to**: an agreement / a conclusion / a standstill [stop] / an end / a decision / blows [to start fighting] / to terms with [acknowledge and accept psychologically] / one's senses [to become conscious after fainting or to become sensible after behaving foolishly]
- come into**: bloom / flower / contact / a fortune / money / a legacy / operation [start working] / sight / view / power [of a political party] / existence / fashion / use

Here are some phrasal verbs based on go. Some have a number of different meanings.

- Go on**: What is **going on** next door? [happening]; They **went on** working despite the noise. [continued]; As the weeks **went on**, things improved. [passed]; You **go on**, we'll catch you up later. [go in advance]; The oven should **go on** at six. [start operating]; He's always **going on** at me about my hair. [complaining].
- Go through**: I wouldn't like to **go through** that again. [experience, endure]; Let's **go through** the plans once more. [check]; Unfortunately, the business deal we were hoping for did not **go through** in the end. [was not completed or approved]; He **went through** a fortune in one weekend. [spent, used]
- Go for**: He really **went for** her when she dared to criticise him. [attack]; He **goes for** older women. [is attracted by]; Which course have you decided to **go for**? [choose]
- Those shoes don't **go with** that dress. [suit, match]
- The alarm **went off** when the burglars tried to open the door. [rang]
- He would never **go back on** his word. [break a promise]

D

Here are some expressions based on go.

- Let me have a **go**! [Let me have a turn or try!]
- I hope they'll **make a go** of the business. [make a success of]
- He's been **on the go** all day and he's exhausted. [very busy, on the move]
- It goes without saying that we'll all support you. [clear without being said]
- Your work is good, as far as it **goes**. [but is limited or insufficient]
- The story **goes that** they were once very close friends. [It is said that...]
- I'm sure she'll **go far**. [be very successful]
- They **went to great lengths** to keep it a secret. [took a lot of trouble]
- The business has **gone bankrupt**. [not got enough money to pay debts]

Exercises

89.1 Which of their several meanings do these underlined verbs have?

- 1 He went on composing music till his eighties. *continued*
- 2 She was so suspicious that she used to go through his pockets every night.
- 3 The dog went for the postman.
- 4 The actor's interpretation of Hamlet was interesting but it didn't quite come off.
- 5 He has a new book coming out in June.
- 6 I wish you'd stop going on at me!
- 7 I was sure he'd go for a sports car.
- 8 I went through three pairs of tights this weekend.

89.2 Choose one of the expressions in B to complete each of the sentences.

- 1 I found it really hard to make up my mind but in the end I came
- 2 When his grandmother dies, he'll come
- 3 I love it in spring when my cherry tree comes
- 4 Halfway up the hill, the bus came
- 5 They say that long skirts are coming again.
- 6 The telephone first came over a hundred years ago.
- 7 They disagreed so strongly that I was afraid they'd come
- 8 As we rounded the corner the house came

89.3 Replace the underlined expressions with one of the expressions in D.

- 1 I don't need to say that we wish you all the best in the future.
- 2 They took great pains to avoid meeting each other.
- 3 I've been moving around all day and I'm longing for a shower now.
- 4 His school-teachers always said that he would be a success in life.
- 5 I don't think you'll be able to push the car on your own. Let me try.
- 6 The film is quite good up to a point but it doesn't tackle the problem deeply enough.

89.4 Which answer on the right fits each question on the left?

- | | |
|---|----------------------------|
| 1 Why is she looking so miserable? | Any time after eight. |
| 2 Did anything new come up at the meeting? | The firm went bankrupt. |
| 3 When does your alarm clock usually go off? | A bit of a fight, I think. |
| 4 What's the worst pain you've ever gone through? | From a doting aunt. |
| 5 How did he come by so much money? | Seven thirty, normally. |
| 6 When should I come round to your place? | Only Jack's proposal. |
| 7 What's going on over there? | When I pulled a ligament. |

89.5 Complete the following sentences in any appropriate way.

- 1 I'm sure they'll make a go of their new clothes boutique because...
- 2 The stain won't come out unless you...
- 3 Those shoes don't go with...
- 4 I never want to go through...
- 5 As the party went on...
- 6 It is not easy to come to terms with...
- 7 The interview committee came to the conclusion that...
- 8 I came across not only some old letters in the attic...

90 Expressions with look

This diagram illustrates some of the most useful phrasal verbs formed with look. The meaning of the phrasal verb is given in brackets.

look	up to	He has always looked up to his elder brother. [respect]
	into	The police are looking into the case. [investigate]
	for	Could you help me look for my keys, please? [try to find]
	back on	I look back on my schooldays with great pleasure. [recall]
	up	Look her town up in the atlas. [find information in a book]
	after	She is very good at looking after her sister. [take care of]
	forward to	I'm looking forward to starting work. [expect with pleasure]
	on	Look on this day off as a reward for your hard work. [consider]
	out	If you don't look out he'll take your job from you. [take care]

Here are a few more useful phrasal verbs based on look. All of them are illustrated below in a business context but they can also, of course, be used in other situations.

- Please **look through** the proposal and let me know what you think. [examine]
- I've **looked over** your proposal but I still need to read the fine print. [examined quickly]
- Business is **looking up** at last. [starting to improve]
- When you go to New York, be sure to **look up** our representative there. [find and visit]
- We are **looking to** the Far East for an increase in sales. [depending on]
- The company seems to be **looking ahead** to a bright future. [planning for the future]

Here are some other useful expressions based on look.

- Try to **look on the bright side of things**. [be cheerful in spite of difficulties]
- He's beginning to **look his age**. [appear as old as he really is]
- They're always **on the lookout** for new talent. [searching for]
- I don't like the **look of** those black clouds. [what I see suggests trouble ahead]
- There's going to be a heavy thunderstorm, **by the look(s) of it**. [It appears probable. (This expression usually comes at the end of the sentence.)]
- I know she's hiding something when she won't **look me in the eye**. [look directly at someone without fear or guilt]
- The officer **looked the men up and down** and then started to tell them what he thought of them in no uncertain terms. [inspect closely in order to judge]
- Everyone hates being made to **look small**. [appear unimportant or silly]
- She **looks down her nose at** anyone who is no good at sport. [regards as unimportant or socially inferior]
- It's **not much to look at** but it's comfortable. [not attractive in appearance]
- The office has been given a **new look** over the weekend. [a fresh and more up-to-date appearance]
- Look before you leap**. [Think before you act boldly.]

Exercises

90.1 What words do you need to complete the sentences below?

- 1 I look that summer with some regrets.
- 2 He has a great respect for his colleagues but he doesn't really look his boss.
- 3 You're going to London? Do look my sister when you're there.
- 4 A government inquiry is looking the cause of the accident.
- 5 We are looking you to bring the company successfully out of the recession.
- 6 I'm sorry to hear you lost your job. I do hope that things will look for you soon.
- 7 Six nurses look the patients in this ward.

90.2 Match the statements or questions on the left with the responses to them on the right. The first one has been done.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 Try to look on the bright side of things. | Why, what do you expect to happen? |
| 2 Look out! | I thought it was time I had a new look. |
| 3 Why don't you think she's honest? | You'd never think she was a grandmother. |
| 4 She certainly doesn't look her age. | Why, what's the... |
| 5 I don't like the look of the situation. | She'll be lucky at the moment. |
| 6 She's on the lookout for a new job. | She never looks you in the eye. |
| 7 What have you done to your hair? | It's rather hard in the circumstances. |

90.3 Complete the sentences below in any logical way.

Example: I must look up their number in the phone book.

- 1 I'm really looking forward to...
- 2 It's wrong to look down on...
- 3 The book looks back on...
- 4 When I look ahead...
- 5 If you have time tonight, please look over...
- 6 Look us up when...

90.4 Replace the more formal underlined expressions with one of the phrasal verbs or other expressions based on *look* from the opposite page.

- 1 He appears to be in need of a good night's sleep.
- 2 The headteacher inspected the children and then nodded her approval.
- 3 No-one likes being made to appear foolish.
- 4 The garden isn't very attractive now but it's lovely in summer.
- 5 The expression on his face seems rather ominous.
- 6 Try to remain optimistic if you possibly can.

90.5 Write three nouns that are likely to be found after each of the phrasal verbs below.

- 1 look for 2 look after 3 look through 4 look to

91 Miscellaneous expressions

A

The units which deal with phrasal verbs and other expressions present only a small number of the expressions that exist. There are many others based on both the basic verbs focused on in Units 84–90 and on a whole range of other verbs. This unit looks at some other verbs, giving examples of a few of the phrasal verbs and expressions connected with them.

B

See

I must see **about/to** arrangements for the conference. [deal with]
They've gone to see Jim off at the airport. [go with someone about to set off on a journey]
It's easy to see **through** his behaviour. [not be deceived by]
It's sometimes hard to see **the wood for the trees**. [get a clear view of the whole of something because of distracting details]
Do you think you could see **your way to** lending me a fiver? [feel it was possible to]
I must be **seeing** things. [having hallucinations]

C

Run

I **ran into** an old friend yesterday. [met unexpectedly]
Her patience has **run out**. [come to an end]
Let's **run over** the plans again. [review]
The children have **run me off** my feet today. [kept me so busy that I'm exhausted]
She **runs** the business while he looks after the children. [manages / has overall responsibility for]
How often do the trains **run**? [go]

D

Turn

There was a very large **turnout** at the concert. [number of people who came]
She **turned down** their offer of promotion. [refused]
Who do you think **turned up** last night? [made an appearance, often unexpectedly]
I'm going to **turn over a new leaf** this year. [make a fresh start]
It's **your turn** to do the washing-up. [It's your duty this time because I did it last time.]
He did me a good **turn**. [a favour]

Let

He has been **let down** so many times in the past. [disappointed]
He won't **let us** into the secret. [tell us]
I hope the rain **lets up** soon. [becomes less strong]
Let **go of** the rope. [stop holding] Please **let me** be. [stop bothering me]
She **let it slip** that she had been given a pay rise. [mentioned accidentally or casually]

Break

The car **broke down** again this morning. [stopped working]
There isn't going to be a wedding – they have **broken off** their engagement. [ended]
Burglars **broke into** our house while we were on holiday. [forcibly entered]
I'm dreading **breaking** the news to him. [telling him the news]
He has **broken her heart**. [made her deeply unhappy]
The athlete **broke the record** for the 1000 metres. [created a new record]

Exercises

- 91.1** Use the expressions on the opposite page to help you fill in the gaps in the text below. Use one word only in each gap.

Let's run (1) the plans for tomorrow's disco just once more. First, I must see (2) the food arrangements while you make sure that none of the equipment is likely to break (3). I don't imagine that many people will turn (4) until later but Nick and Jill have promised to come early to help us and I'm sure they won't let us (5) even though Jill let it (6) the other day that they are thinking of breaking (7) their engagement.

- 91.2** Rewrite the following using the words in brackets.

- 1 Why does she let herself be deceived by him? (see)
- 2 I met Jack by chance at the station yesterday. (run)
- 3 I cooked the dinner yesterday. It's up to you to do it today. (turn)
- 4 I thought I was hallucinating when I saw a monkey in the garden. (see)
- 5 I wish you'd stop bothering me. (let)
- 6 He told us in secret that they were planning to break into the house. (let)
- 7 An enormous crowd came to hear the Prime Minister speak. (turn)

- 91.3** Complete the sentences in an appropriate way.

- 1 If the snow doesn't let up soon...
- 2 A person who cannot see the wood for the trees does not make a good...
- 3 Halfway up the mountain he let go...
- 4 Although the turnout for the meeting was not large...
- 5 He felt terribly let down when...
- 6 She didn't turn up...
- 7 I'm afraid we've run out...
- 8 He asked if I could see my way...

- 91.4** Answer the questions below.

- 1 Have you ever turned down an offer or invitation that you later regretted?
- 2 Have you ever had problems because of something (a vehicle or a piece of equipment, perhaps) breaking down at an inconvenient time? What happened?
- 3 Who really runs the country, in your opinion?
- 4 Have you done anyone a good turn today? If so, what did you do?
- 5 Which record would you most like to break?
- 6 Do you think it is possible for someone's heart to be broken?
- 7 Have you ever resolved to turn over a new leaf? In what way(s)?
- 8 Have you any particular jobs that you must see to today? If so, what?
- 9 Has your home ever been broken into? What happened?

- 91.5** The expressions opposite are only some of many expressions using these five verbs. Can you think of two other phrasal verbs or other idiomatic expressions using each of the verbs? If you can't, try to find them in a dictionary.

92 Headline English

Headline writers try to catch the reader's eye by using as few words as possible. The language headlines use is, consequently, unusual in a number of ways.

- Grammar words like articles or auxiliary verbs are often left out, e.g. **EARLY CUT FORECAST IN INTEREST RATES**
- A simple form of the verb is used, e.g. **QUEEN OPENS HOSPITAL TODAY**
- The infinitive is used to express the fact that something is going to happen in the future, e.g. **PRESIDENT TO VISIT MINE**

B

Newspaper headlines use a lot of distinctive vocabulary. They prefer words that are usually shorter and generally sound more dramatic than ordinary English words. The words marked * can be used either as nouns or verbs.

<i>newspaper word</i>	<i>meaning</i>	<i>newspaper word</i>	<i>meaning</i>
aid *	help	key	essential, vital
axe *	cut, remove	link *	connection
back	support	move *	step towards a desired end
bar *	exclude, forbid	ordeal	painful experience
bid *	attempt	oust	push out
blast *	explosion	plea	request
blaze *	fire	pledge *	promise
boost *	incentive, encourage	ploy	clever activity
boss *	manager, director	poll *	election / public opinion survey
head *		probe *	investigation
clash *	dispute	quit	leave, resign
curb *	restraint, limit	riddle	mystery
cut *	reduction	strife	conflict
drama	tense situation	talks	discussions
drive *	campaign, effort	threat	danger
gems	jewels	vow *	promise
go-ahead	approval	wed	marry
hit	affect badly		

Newspaper headlines often use abbreviations, e.g. PM for Prime Minister, MP for Member of Parliament. (See Unit 98 for more abbreviations.)

Some newspapers also enjoy making jokes in their headlines. They do this by playing with words or punning, e.g. a wet open air concert in London by the opera singer Luciano Pavarotti was described as:

TORRENTIAL RAIN IN MOST ARIAS [‘most areas’]

An announcement that a woman working at the Mars chocolate company had got an interesting new job was:

WOMAN FROM MARS TO BE FIRST BRITON IN SPACE

(Note that the word ‘Briton’ is almost exclusively found in newspapers.)

Exercises

92.1 On the left there is a list of headlines. On the right there is a list of news topics. Match the headlines with the appropriate topic as in the example.

- | | |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1 PM BACKS PEACE PLAN | marriage of famous actress |
| 2 MP SPY DRAMA | royal jewels are stolen |
| 3 SPACE PROBE FAILS | person who saw crime in danger |
| 4 QUEEN'S GEMS RIDDLE | proposal to end war |
| 5 STAR WEDS | satellite is not launched |
| 6 KEY WITNESS DEATH THREAT | politician sells secrets to enemy |

92.2 Explain what the following headlines mean in ordinary English.

Example: SHOP BLAZE 5 DEAD Five people died in a fire in a shop.

- 1 MOVE TO CREATE MORE JOBS
- 2 GO-AHEAD FOR WATER CURBS
- 3 WOMAN QUILTS AFTER JOB ORDEAL
- 4 POLL PROBES SPENDING HABITS
- 5 BID TO OUST PM
- 6 PRINCE VOWS TO BACK FAMILY

92.3 The words marked * in the table opposite can be either nouns or verbs. Note that the meaning given is usually in the form of a noun. In the headlines below you have examples of words from the table used as verbs. Look at the underlined verbs and explain what they mean. You may need to use more than one word.

Example: PM TO CURB SPENDING limit

- 1 BOOK LINKS MI5 WITH KGB
- 2 CHANCELLOR CUTS INTEREST RATES
- 3 BOMB BLASTS CENTRAL LONDON
- 4 PM PLEDGES BACKING FOR EUROPE
- 5 PRESIDENT HEADS PEACE MOVES

92.4 Would you be interested in the stories under the following headlines? Why (not)?

**Mortgages cut as
bank rates fall again**

**Teenage £4m
fraud riddle**

New tennis clash

**Women barred
from jobs**

**Price curbs
boost exports**

Royal family quits

92.5 Look through some English language newspapers and find some examples of headlines illustrating the points made on the opposite page. Beside each headline make a note of what the accompanying story is about. Try to find some examples of amusing headlines.

93 US English

A English in the USA differs considerably from British English. Pronunciation is the most striking difference but there are also a number of differences in vocabulary and spelling as well as slight differences in grammar. On the whole, British people are exposed to a lot of American English on TV, in films and so on and so they will usually understand most American vocabulary.

American spelling is usually simpler. For example, British English words ending in -our and -re, end in -or and -er in American English, e.g. colour/color, centre/center. There are differences in individual words too, e.g. British 'plough' becomes 'plow'. The American spelling usually tries to correspond more closely to pronunciation.

C Here are some common US words with their British equivalents.

Travel and on the street		In the home	
<i>American English</i>	<i>British English</i>	<i>American English</i>	<i>British English</i>
gasoline	petrol	antenna	aerial
truck	lorry	elevator	lift
baggage	luggage	eraser	rubber
blow-out	puncture	apartment	flat
sidewalk	pavement	closet	wardrobe
line	queue	drapes	curtains
vacation	holiday	faucet	tap
trunk (of car)	boot	kerosene	paraffin
hood (of car)	bonnet	Scotch tape	sellotape
cab	taxi	yard	garden
freeway	motorway	cookie	biscuit
round trip	return	candy	sweets
railway car	railway carriage	garbage	rubbish
engineer (on train)	engine driver	diaper	nappy
baby carriage	pram	panti-hose	tights

Note also: the fall = autumn semester = term [semester is becoming common in Britain.]

D Here are some words and phrases which can cause confusion when used by Brits and Americans talking together because they mean something different in each 'language'.

<i>when they say:</i>	<i>an American means what a Brit calls:</i>	<i>and a Brit means what an American calls:</i>
a bill	a (bank) note	a check (in a café)
the first floor	the ground floor	the second floor
pants	trousers	underpants
potato chips	potato crisps	french fries
purse	a handbag	a wallet
subway	an underground railway	an underpass
vest	a waistcoat	an undershirt
wash up	wash your hands	wash the dishes

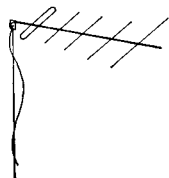
Exercises

93.1 If you saw words spelt in the following way would you expect the writer in each case to be British or American? Why?

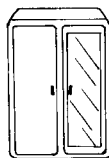
1 labor 2 centre 3 hospitalized 4 movie theater 5 favour 6 thru

93.2 What are (a) the American and (b) the British words for the following things?

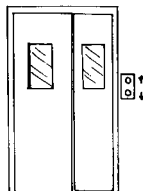
1



2



3



4



5



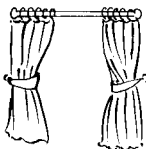
6



7



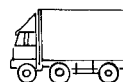
8



9



10



93.3 You are going on holiday to the States. Which of the words listed in B and C opposite do you think it would be most important for you to know? Which of the words would a person travelling with a baby might well need to know?

93.4 Translate the following into British English.

- | | |
|-------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1 I had a blow-out. | 6 It's in the trunk. |
| 2 Pass me the cookies. | 7 One-way or round trip? |
| 3 It's in the closet. | 8 He left the faucet on. |
| 4 Open the drapes. | 9 We're leaving in the fall. |
| 5 We've run out of gas. | 10 I hate waiting in line. |

93.5 Can you avoid some of the most common confusions arising between British and American speakers? Try the following quiz.

- Where would you take (a) an American visitor (b) a British visitor who said they wanted to wash up – the kitchen or the bathroom?
- Would (a) an American (b) a Brit be expected to get something hot or something cold if they asked for some potato chips?
- Which would surprise you more – an American or a British man telling you that he wanted to go and change his pants?
- You have just come into an unknown office block. If (a) an American (b) a Brit says that the office you need is on the second floor, how many flights of stairs do you need to climb?
- If (a) an American (b) a Brit asks for a bill, is he or she more likely to be in a bank or a café?

93.6 Do you know any other examples of American English? Make a list at an appropriate place in your vocabulary notebook or file.

94 Other Englishes

US or American English (see Unit 93) is not the only special variety of English. Each area of the English-speaking world has developed its own special characteristics. This is usually mainly a matter of vocabulary and pronunciation. This unit just gives you a small taste of some of the different varieties of English by drawing your attention to vocabulary used in various English-speaking regions. All the words covered in this unit would be understood by educated native speakers of British English although they might not choose to use them themselves. They are all words which you may come across in your own reading, listening or viewing.

Australian English is particularly interesting for its rich store of highly colloquial words and expressions. Australian colloquialisms often involve shortening a word. Sometimes the ending '-ie' or '-o' is then added, e.g. a **smoko** (from smoking), is a 'tea or coffee break' and a **milko** delivers the milk; **beaut**, short for 'beautiful' means 'great'. Because of the current popularity of Australian TV programmes and films, some of these words are now being used by British people too.

Indian English, on the other hand, is characterised by sounding more formal than British English. It has retained in everyday usage words that are found more in the classics of nineteenth century literature than in contemporary TV programmes from London, e.g. The bereaved are **condoled** and the Prime Minister is **felicitated** on his or her birthday. An Indian might complain of a pain in his **bosom** (rather than his chest) and an Indian bandit is referred to as a **miscreant**.

Scottish English uses a number of special dialect words. Some of the more common of these are worth learning.

aye: yes
ben: mountain
brae: bank (of river)
dram: drink (usually whisky)
glen: valley
kirk: church

loch: lake
to mind: to remember
bairn: child
bonny: beautiful
burn: stream
stay: live

dreich: dull
janitor: caretaker
lassie: girl
outwith: outside
wee: small
ken: know

E

Black English is the term used to refer to the English which originated in the Caribbean islands and has now spread to many parts of the UK, Canada and the USA. Listed below are some words which are characteristic of Black English but are also now used in other varieties of English. Many are particularly associated with the music world.

dreadlocks: Rastafarian hairstyle
chick: girl
jam: improvise
rap: street-talk

beat: exhausted
dig: understand
pad: bed
square: dull

Exercises

94.1 What do you think these examples of Australian colloquialisms mean? They are all formed by abbreviating an English word which you probably know.

- 1 Where did you go when you were in Oz?
- 2 She wants to be a journo when she leaves uni.
- 3 We got terribly bitten by mozzies at yesterday's barbie.
- 4 He's planning to do a bit of farming bizzo while he's in the States.
- 5 What are you doing this arvo?
- 6 We decided to have a party as the oldies had gone away for the weekend.

94.2 The words on the left are more common in Indian English than British English. The words on the right are the equivalent words more frequently used in British English. Match the Indian word with its British English equivalent.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1 abscond | catch (e.g. by police) |
| 2 nab | man who annoys girls |
| 3 bag (i.e. a seat in an election) | plimsolls, sneakers |
| 4 Eve-teaser | underwear |
| 5 the common man | flee |
| 6 fleetfoots | people awaiting trial |
| 7 undertrials | the general public |
| 8 wearunders | capture/obtain |

94.3 Below you have some statements made by a Scot. Answer the questions about them.

- 1 Mary had a bonny wee lassie last night.
What happened to Mary yesterday?
- 2 They stay next to the kirk.
What noise is likely to wake them on Sunday mornings?
- 3 It's a bit dreich today.
Is it good weather for a picnic?
- 4 He's got a new job as janitor at the school.
What kind of duties will he have?
- 5 Would you like a wee dram?
If you say 'yes', what will you get?
- 6 'Are you coming, Jim?' 'Aye'.
Is Jim coming or isn't he?
- 7 They have a wonderful view of the loch from their window.
What can they see from the window?

94.4 Answer the following questions relating to Black English.

- 1 Would you be pleased to be called square?
- 2 What does hair that is in dreadlocks look like?
- 3 When might you feel dead beat?
- 4 If musicians have a jam session, what do they do?

95 Slang

A

Slang is a particular kind of colloquial language. It refers to words and expressions which are extremely informal. Slang helps to make speech vivid, colourful and interesting but it can easily be used inappropriately. Although slang is mainly used in speech, it is also often found in the popular press.

B

It can be risky for someone who is not a native speaker to use slang.

Firstly because some slang expressions may cause offence to some sections of the population. For example, most policemen are quite happy to be referred to as coppers but are offended by the term **pigs**. Similarly, you could probably use the word **sozzled** (meaning drunk) in front of anyone but using the words, **pissed** or **arseholed**, which also mean drunk, could upset some people.

Secondly, slang words date very quickly. Different generations, for instance, have used different slang expressions to say that something was 'wonderful'.

pre-war: top-hole	1970s: ace, cosmic
1940s: wizard	1980s: brill, wicked
1960s: fab, groovy	

It can be possible to work out a native speaker's age from the expressions which they use, as people tend to stick with the slang expressions of their youth.

To sum up, you may find it interesting to learn about slang and you may come across slang expressions (particularly when you are watching films or reading popular newspapers or novels) but you might be well advised to avoid using slang yourself.

C

Here are some examples of some slang words and expressions which you may come across. The ones which are most likely to cause offence are underlined.

Expressions for money: dough, bread, dosh, loot, brass, spondulicks

Expressions for the police: pigs, fuzz, cop(per)s, bill

Expressions for drunk: pissed, sozzled, paralytic, legless, arseholed

Expressions for a stupid person: wally, prat, nerd, jerk, dickhead, plonker, pillock

Expressions for lavatory: loo, lav, bog, john

Expressions for drink: booze, plonk (wine), a snifter, a snort

Drug-related expressions: a fix, dope, grass, high, stoned, snow (heroin)

Prison-related expressions: nick (prison), nark (informer), screw (warder)

D

Slang is often used by one particular group and is unintelligible to other people. Here are some examples from American truck-drivers using CB radio to talk to each other.

grandma lane: slow lane

doughnuts: tyres

motion lotion: fuel

five finger discount: stolen goods

anklebiters: children

eyeballs: headlights

super cola: beer

affirmative: yes

Exercises

- 95.1** Replace the slang words which are underlined in the sentences below with more formal equivalents. If the meaning is not given opposite, then it should be possible to guess what it is. Notice that some of the words have a slang meaning which is different from their everyday meaning.

- 1 The newsreader on TV last night seemed to be pissed as he was reading the news.
- 2 He's quite a nice bloke really.
- 3 I've got a terrible belly ache – I think I'd better make an appointment with the quack.
- 4 Her dad was furious when he learnt he had to wear a penguin suit to the wedding.
- 5 Can you lend me some dosh till tomorrow?
- 6 I know there'll be plenty of nosh but do we need to take some booze to the party?
- 7 Have you got wheels or shall we call a taxi?
- 8 I'm dying for a cuppa. I haven't had one since breakfast.
- 9 Can I use your loo, please?
- 10 I was absolutely gobsmacked when she told me she was leaving.

- 95.2** Match the statements on the left with the responses to them on the right.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1 How was the party? | Let's take him home. |
| 2 What does that guy over there do? | Sure. I'll keep my eyes skinned. |
| 3 He's getting legless. | He's in the nick. |
| 4 Keep a lookout for the pigs. | It's in a drawer, over here. |
| 5 Where's the dough? | He's a cop. |
| 6 Where's her hubby? | Let's go for a run in the motor. |
| 7 What'll we do tomorrow? | Wicked! |

- 95.3** A particular well-known kind of slang is Cockney rhyming slang where an expression is used in place of something that it rhymes with.

Example: trouble and strife = wife apples and pears = stairs

How would you translate the Cockney rhyming slang expressions in the sentences below?

- 1 Let's have a butcher's (short for butcher's hook) at your homework.
- 2 Just look at those Gawd forbids playing football!
- 3 It's on the Cain and Abel next to the phone.
- 4 What a set of Hampstead Heath!
- 5 She'll get him to the lean and lurch by hook or by crook.
- 6 Have you seen my titfer? (short for tit for tat)

- 95.4** Another common way of making slang words is by using short forms or loosely pronounced forms of ordinary words. Thus fab is a slang form of 'fabulous' and hubby is a slang form of 'husband'. Can you work out the meanings of the following underlined slang words?

- | | | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1 He's my <u>fella</u> . | 3 It was a <u>freebie</u> . | 5 I took a <u>sickie</u> . |
| 2 Let's have <u>brekkie</u> . | 4 He's a <u>brickie</u> . | 6 Let's have a <u>barbie</u> . |

96 The language of notices

A

Notices in English often use words and expressions that are rarely seen in other contexts. Look at the notices below with their 'translations' into more everyday English.

**Do not alight from
the bus whilst
it is in motion**

- 1 Don't get off the bus while it's moving.

**TRESPASSERS
WILL BE
PROSECUTED**

- 2 People who walk on this private land will be taken to court.

**KINDLY REFRAIN
FROM SMOKING
IN THE AUDITORIUM**

- 3 Please don't smoke in the theatre/hall.

**PENALTY FOR
DROPPING LITTER –
UP TO £100 FINE**

- 4 You can be taken to court and made to pay £100 for dropping rubbish.

**Lunches now
being served**

- 5 You can buy lunch here now.

**NO ADMISSION TO
UNACCOMPANIED
MINORS**

- 6 Young people under 18 years old can only come in if they are with an adult.

**FEEDING THE ANIMALS
STRICTLY PROHIBITED**

- 7 You are not allowed to feed the animals.

**No through road
for motor vehicles**

- 8 There is no way out at the other end of this road for cars.

**NO BILL-
STICKING**

- 9 You mustn't put up any posters here.

*Please place your
purchases here*

- 10 Please put the things you are going to buy / have bought here.

**This packet carries
a government
health warning**

- 11 What is in this packet is officially considered bad for your health.

Reduce speed now

- 12 Start going more slowly now.

***Pay and
display***

- 13 Buy a ticket and put it in a place where it can easily be seen.

**Cyclists
dismount
here**

- 14 Cyclist should get off their bikes here.

**FISHING: PERMIT
HOLDERS ONLY**

- 15 Only people with special cards giving them permission are allowed to fish here.

B

You will find more examples of a specific kind of notice, road signs, in Unit 49.

Exercises

96.1 Where would you expect to see each of the notices on the opposite page?

Example: 1 on a bus

96.2 Match each of the words on the left with their more everyday translations from the list on the right.

- | | |
|------------------|---|
| 1 to prosecute | a young person under the age of 18 |
| 2 a penalty | to get off a bicycle or a horse |
| 3 a purchase | to bring a legal case against |
| 4 a trespasser | not to do something |
| 5 to refrain | to forbid something |
| 6 to alight from | a means of transport |
| 7 to prohibit | a punishment |
| 8 an auditorium | something which has been or is to be bought |
| 9 to dismount | to get off a means of public transport |
| 10 a minor | large place where an audience sits |
| 11 a vehicle | someone who goes on private land without permission |

96.3 Explain the notices below. Where might you see each of these notices?

- | | | |
|--|--|--|
| 1 SHOP-LIFTERS WILL
BE PROSECUTED | 5 Admission to
ticket holders only | 9 Flat to let |
| 2 <i>French spoken here</i> | 6 <i>No vacancies</i> | 10 Dogs must be
carried |
| 3 Nothing to declare | 7 FISHING
STRICTLY
PROHIBITED | 11 These seats are
appreciated by the
old and infirm |
| 4 Clearance sale
starts today | 8 <i>Cycles for hire or sale</i> | |

96.4 What notice would a café-owner put up if they wanted to:

- 1 indicate that their café was now open for coffee?
- 2 let people know that the café staff can speak Spanish?
- 3 stop people from smoking in their café?
- 4 let people know that they can buy free-range eggs there too?
- 5 ask people not to fix notices onto their wall?
- 6 tell people that they could rent rooms there overnight?

96.5 If you are in or go to visit an English-speaking country, make a collection in your vocabulary book of any notices that you see.

97 Words and gender

In this unit we look at the problems of using words in a way that is not offensive to either gender. In English, a lot of words are marked as masculine or feminine by suffixes, but many other words have 'female' or 'male' associations and should be used carefully.

A Suffixes marking gender

-er(-or)/-ess: traditionally used to mark male (m) and female (f), e.g. actress (f) / actor (m); waitress (f) / waiter (m).

These two words are still often used in both forms, but forms such as **authoress**, **poetess**, **murderess** and **manageress** are considered old-fashioned. If you want to be neutral, you can use the -er/-or suffix for male or female.

Schoolmistress/master sound old-fashioned, use **teacher** instead; **air hostess** also sounds out of date, use **flight attendant** (neutral) or **stewardess**.

B -man, -woman and -person

Traditional social roles often meant that **-man** was used even for roles performed by women. Now many people prefer a neutral form for both sexes, if there is one available.

<i>neutral</i>	<i>traditional male</i>	<i>traditional female</i>
chair(person)	chairman	chairwoman
spokesperson	spokesman	spokeswoman
police officer	policeman	policewoman
—	postman	postwoman
—	fisherman	—
bartender	barman	barmaid
businessperson	businessman	businesswoman
firefighter	fireman	—
flight attendant	steward	stewardess / air hostess
head (teacher)	headmaster	headmistress

C 'Social' marking of words

Some words, particularly the names of jobs, are socially marked as belonging to one gender, even though the words are neutral in form, e.g. in English, **nurse** was considered so 'female' that if a man was a nurse, he was often referred to as a **male nurse**.

Just consider your own reaction to these words, and whether most people would tend to think of a man or a woman upon hearing them.

barber hairdresser burglar secretary farmer butcher

Note: **bachelor** and **spinster** can both have negative or undesirable associations. Use **unmarried** or **single (man/woman)** instead. Likewise, instead of **fiancé(e)**, you can use **partner**, especially for someone you live with as a couple but are not married to.

Many women nowadays prefer the title **Ms /məz/**, rather than **Miss** or **Mrs**.

Exercises

- 97.1** Look at this rather sexist advertisement for an airline. Change the wording to make it more neutral.

Now! Eagle Airlines offers even more to the businessman who needs comfort.

Let us fly you to your destination in first-class comfort, looked after by the best-trained air hostesses in the world. Any businessman knows that he must arrive fresh and ready for work no matter how long the journey. With Eagle Diplomat-Class you can do just that. And, what's more, your wife can travel with you on all intercontinental flights for only 25% of the normal fare! Your secretary can book you on any flights 24 hours a day on 0557-465769. All she has to do is lift the phone.

- 97.2** Here are some more names of jobs and occupations. Are they marked for gender either in the form of the word itself, or 'socially' marked as typically male or female? How are they translated into your language, by neutral or by gender-marked words?

1 conductor	4 typist	7 general	10 milkman
2 shepherd	5 station master	8 detective	11 tailor
3 cheerleader	6 dressmaker	9 monk	

- 97.3** These words include some that many people consider sexist. Put the words into appropriate pairs with their neutral alternatives.

cabin attendant	man-hours	unmanned	air hostess	unstaffed	spinster
human beings	single woman	mankind	person-hours		

- 97.4** Change gender-marked words into neutral ones.

- 1 We shall have to elect a new chairman next month.
- 2 Several firemen and policemen were hurt in the riots.
- 3 A spokesman for the store said the manageress had decided to resign.
- 4 I wonder what time the postman comes every day.
- 5 I can't see a barman anywhere. Shall I press this bell and see if someone comes?
- 6 Her brother's a male nurse, and she's an authoress.

- 97.5** Make this letter more neutral.

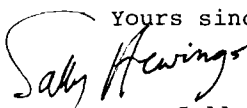
The Manager
Frinstowe Engineering Ltd

22/11/92

Dear Sir,

I am a spinster aged 22 and am seeking employment. I saw your advertisement for part-time workers in *The Globe* last week. However, your 24-hour answering service seemed to be unmanned when I tried it. Could you please send me application forms by post? Thank you.

Yours sincerely,



Sally Hewings (Miss)

98 Abbreviations

Some abbreviations are read as individual letters:

WHO (W-H-O)	World Health Organisation	IRA	Irish Republican Army
PLO	Palestine Liberation Organisation	UN	United Nations
BBC	British Broadcasting Corporation	PM	Prime Minister
ANC	African National Congress	MP	Member of Parliament

In the following three cases, the name of each country and the name of its secret police are pronounced as individual letters/numbers.

CIA (USA) MI5 (UK) KGB (former USSR, now CIS)

Note: When these abbreviations are stressed words in the sentence, the stress falls on the last letter, e.g. She works for the CIA. I heard it on the BBC.

B Some abbreviations are read as words; we call them **acronyms**.

NATO	/ˈneɪtəʊ/	North Atlantic Treaty Organisation
OPEC	/ˈəʊpek/	Organisation of Petroleum Exporting Countries
AIDS	/eɪdz/	Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome

Some acronyms have become so normal as words that people do not think of them as abbreviations any longer, and so they are not written all in capital letters.

laser radar yuppy Esso

C Some abbreviations are only written forms; they are still pronounced as the full word.

Mr (Mister) Dr (Doctor) St (Saint or Street)

D Abbreviations are used in the organisation of language.

etc. /etˈsetrə/ and so on [Latin: et cetera]
 i.e. (I-E): that is to say [Latin: id est]
 PTO (P-T-O) please turn over
 NB (N-B) please note [Latin: nota bene]
 RSVP (R-S-V-P) please reply [French: répondez s'il vous plaît]
 e.g. (E-G) for example [Latin: exempli gratia]

E Clippings: some words are normally used in an abbreviated form in informal situations. (See also Unit 7.)

lab (laboratory) phone (telephone) fridge (refrigerator)
 TV or telly (television) board (blackboard) bike (bicycle) case (suitcase)
 exam (examination) plane (aeroplane) rep (business representative)
 ad/advert (advertisement) fax (telefax)

Some abbreviations you might see on a letter/fax/envelope.

c/o care of [e.g. T. Smith, c/o J. Brown; the letter goes to J. Brown's address]
 enc. enclosed [e.g. enc. application form]
 PS postscript [extra message after the letter has been ended]
 asap as soon as possible [e.g. ring me asap]

Exercises

98.1 What things in these addresses are normally abbreviated? How is Ms pronounced in the second address?

- | | | |
|---------------------|-----------------|-----------------------|
| 1 Mister A. Carlton | 2 Ms P. Meldrum | 3 N. Lowe and Company |
| Flat number 5 | care of T. Fox | 7, Bridge Road |
| Hale Crescent | 6, Marl Avenue | Freeminster |
| Borebridge | Preston | United Kingdom |

98.2 Match these abbreviations with their meanings and then group them according to groups A to D opposite.

- | | |
|----------|--|
| 1 BSc | compact disc |
| 2 FBI | for example |
| 3 Fr | Federal Bureau of Investigation |
| 4 ext. | personal identification number (usually on a bank card) |
| 5 CD | United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation |
| 6 asap | Bachelor of Science |
| 7 PIN | extension |
| 8 e.g. | Father (title for a priest) |
| 9 Unesco | as soon as possible |

98.3 'Translate' this note from the boss to a group of workers in an office, into full words.

Memo from: Mr Braneless (MD) To: All staff
 Date: 3/5/91 Ref: 04056/DC
 May I remind you that all new lab equipment should be registered with Stores & Supplies, Room 354 (ext 2683). NB: new items must be notified before 1700hrs on the last day of the month of purchase, i.e. within the current budgeting month. All a/c nos must be recorded.

Braneless

98.4 Explain 1-5 and match them with the contexts on the right.

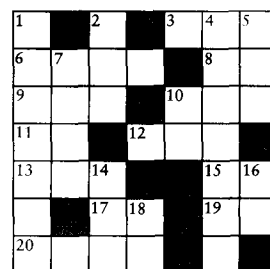
- | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1 Students and OAPs: £1.50 | on an aerosol can |
| 2 WC Gents | in a newspaper headline |
| 3 US forces take 5,000 POWs | on a museum entrance |
| 4 Ozone-friendly: CFC-free | on an airline timetable |
| 5 Dep 1500 Arr 1742 | on a door in a pub |

98.5 Across

- 3 Flying saucer
- 6 N, S, E or W?
- 8 Royal Navy
- 9 Rest in Peace
- 10 Short for biological
- 11 Type of record
- 12 &
- 13 Means 'especially'
- 15 British car-plate
- 17 American
- 19 Famous film alien
- 20 Short name for London Underground

Down

- 1 %
- 2 Same as 13 across
- 4 Refrigerators
- 5 Means 'or nearest offer'
- 7 Serious illness
- 10 'Please note' backwards
- 14 Place for a short drink?
- 16 British Telecom
- 18 South East



99 New words in English

A

No language stands still. New words and expressions are always being created, usually because something new is invented or sometimes just for fun. No government committee decides whether a new word is acceptable or not; if it is used frequently, and in a variety of contexts, it will find its way into the dictionary. Here are some of the words and expressions that have come into English since 1980.

B

New science and technology

faxable: able to be sent by fax machine

junk fax: unsolicited material, such as adverts, sent by fax

tummytuck: a plastic surgery operation to remove fat from the stomach

sound bite: a brief excerpt from a speech or statement, broadcast on TV

C

New sports and fashions

monoboarding: the sport of skiing downhill on a large single ski

snowsurfing: skiing downhill standing sideways on a large single ski

vogueing: a style of dancing to house music incorporating the movements and gestures of models displaying clothes

D

Political and social trends

eco-friendly: not harming the environment

cardboard city: area occupied by cardboard boxes serving as homes for the homeless

teleworking: working from home communicating by computer and fax

advertocracy: pursuit of public policy by mass advertising campaigns

destatisation: withdrawal of the state from areas that were previously state-controlled as in the (former) Soviet bloc in the 80s and 90s

Gorbymania: extreme enthusiasm for the former Soviet President, Mikhail Gorbachev

newmannery: behaviour of the new man (gentle, caring, non-sexist)

couch potato: a lazy person who prefers watching TV to being active

E

New words from other languages

fatwa: formal legal opinion delivered by an Islamic leader (Arabic)

karaoke: singing pop songs solo to recorded music in bars (Japanese)

glasnost: policy of openness or frankness (Russian)

E

New forms or meanings for old words

ageism: prejudice against someone because of their age

nostalgise: to indulge in nostalgia

pre-schooler: a child not yet old enough for school

dark-green: holding radically green political beliefs

singlehood: the state of being single rather than married

clergyman: a male or female member of the clergy (a typical development from clergyman. Compare: chairperson)

Exercises

99.1 Here are some more new words. Match them with their definitions. Which of the five categories opposite does each fit best in?

- | | |
|------------------|---|
| 1 collectomania | a specially bred miniaturised form of vegetable |
| 2 bio-house | a hypothetical miniaturised device capable of making its way through bodily passages and performing various tasks |
| 3 bimbo | an irresistible urge to collect things |
| 4 mini-vegetable | an indoor version of American football |
| 5 arenaball | a house constructed solely from natural materials |
| 6 microbot | a female of limited intelligence but high sex appeal |

99.2 Choose which word from those defined opposite fits into the following sentences.

- 1 I always buy roll-on rather than aerosol deodorants ever since I learnt how much more they are.
- 2 was much more common in the West than the USSR just as Mrs Thatcher was probably more popular outside the UK.
- 3 Most of my married friends think there's a lot to be said for
- 4 I don't think I'd like to try It sounds too dangerous to me.
- 5 They think that in the next ten years more and more people will start It should certainly ease traffic in the rush hours.
- 6 The size of London's seems to grow every time I go there. It sometimes seems as if the country is going backwards.
- 7 He's such a His only activity is pressing the remote control.
- 8 Many politicians now try to ensure they write some effective into their speeches.

99.3 Many of the words on the opposite page will have a very short life. Pick out three that you think may be widely used still in ten years.

99.4 If you meet a new word it is often possible to work out its meaning from its context. Practise by explaining what the underlined words in the following sentences must mean.

- 1 I very much prefer restaurants where there is no microwavery.
- 2 They're building a new cineplex on the edge of the town so we should be able to choose from a variety of films on Saturday nights.
- 3 Upskiing, which uses small parachutes, is a rapidly developing sport in the USA.
- 4 World AIDS Day was inspired by the health globocrats of the World Health Organisation.
- 5 He is writing a thesis on humorology.
- 6 The boss is very much a hands-on manager who likes to be involved in all aspects of the company's work.
- 7 Many large shops now have their own store cards.
- 8 The post-war baby-boomers are now becoming grandparents.

100 Discourse markers

Discourse markers are small words and phrases whose job it is to organise, comment on or in some way frame what we are saying or writing. A common everyday example is the use of **well** in speech:

A: So you live in Boston? B: **Well**, near Boston.

Well here shows that the speaker is aware he/she is changing the direction of the conversation in some way (not giving the expected 'yes' answer). In other words, **well** is a comment on what is being said. Another example is how teachers use words like **right** and **okay** to organise what is happening in a classroom:

Teacher: **Right/okay**, let's have a look at exercise 3.

A

Common markers to organise different stages of talk (as in the teacher example).

Now, what shall we do next? So, would you like to come to the table now, please?
Good, I'll ring you on Thursday, then. **Well** then, what was it you wanted to talk about?
Now then, I want you to look at this picture. [said by someone in control of the conversation, e.g. a teacher]
Fine/Great, let's leave it at that, then, shall we?

B

In these mini-dialogues, the markers in bold *modify* or *comment* on what is being said.

A: It's cold, isn't it?

A: What's her number?

B: Yeah.

B: Let me see, I have it here somewhere...

A: **Mind** you, it is November, so it's not surprising.
[an afterthought – however]

[a hesitation – gaining time]

A: It's quite a problem...

A: And he said he was go –

B: **Listen/Look**, why don't you let me sort it out?

B: Well, that's typical!

A: Would you? Thanks a lot.
[introducing a suggestion/point]

A: **Hang on / Hold on!** Let me tell you what he said!
[preventing an interruption]

Here are some other similar markers.

I can't do that. **You** see, I'm only the secretary. [explaining]

He was, **you** know, sort of... just standing there. [hesitation]

C

Common markers in written English for organising a formal text.

First / Firstly / First of all, we must consider... } for lists
Next, it is important to remember that...

Finally/Lastly, we should look at... [NB *not* 'at last']

In summary, we can say that... [summing up the main points]

In conclusion, I should like to say that... [finishing the text]

D

Markers for explaining, rephrasing, etc., in speech and writing.

Memorising words requires reinforcement; **in other words** / **that is to say**, you have to study the same words over and over again.

Some words are hard to say, **for example** / **for instance**, 'crisps'.

She is, as it were / **so to speak**, living in a world of her own.

[make what you are saying sound less definite/precise]

Exercises

- 100.1** Underline all the discourse markers in this monologue. Not all of them are on the left-hand page.

'Well, where shall I start? It was last summer and we were just sitting in the garden, sort of doing nothing much. Anyway, I looked up and...see we have this kind of long wall at the end of the garden, and it's...like...a motorway for cats, for instance, that big fat black one you saw, well, that one considers it has a right of way over our vegetable patch, so...where was I? Yes, I was looking at that wall, you know, day-dreaming as usual, and all of a sudden there was this new cat I'd never seen before, or rather, it wasn't an ordinary cat at all...I mean, you'll never believe what it was...'

- 100.2** Here are some small dialogues where there are no markers used at all, which would be unusual in real informal talk. Add markers from A, B and D opposite and from exercise 1 above, where you think the speakers might use them.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 A: Are you a football fan?
B: I like it; I wouldn't say I was a fan. | 4 A: Which number is yours?
B: (pause)...it's that one here, yes, this one. |
| 2 A: I'll take care of these.
B: That's everything.
A: See you next week.
B: That was a very useful meeting. | 5 A: He's looking exhausted.
B: Yes, he is.
A: He has an awful lot of responsibility, so it's hardly surprising. |
| 3 A: It was last Monday. I was coming home from work. I saw this ragged old man approaching me. I stopped him –
B: Jim Dibble!
A: Let me tell you what happened first.
them off. | 6 A: What do you mean 'cold'?
B: She's not friendly, very distant. Last week I gave her a jolly smile and she...scowled at me.
A: What do you expect? I've seen the way you smile at people, it puts |

- 100.3** Fill the gaps with markers often found in written texts. You may need some which are not on the left-hand page. The first letter of each phrase/word is given.

Crime and Punishment

F..... (1), it is important to understand why people commit crimes, i.....
..... (2), what are the motives which make people do things they would never normally do? F..... (3), a young man steals clothes from a shop; is it because he is unemployed? a drug addict? mentally disturbed? N..... (4) it is essential to consider whether punishment makes any difference, or is it just, a
..... (5), a kind of revenge? L..... (6), how can we help victims of crime? I..... (7), how can we get to the roots of the problem, rather than just attacking the symptoms?

Follow-up: If you can, make a recording of a natural conversation between native speakers (get their permission, but don't say why you need it). What markers do they use?

Key

Many of your answers will depend on your own particular interests and needs. It is only possible for the key to suggest answers in some cases.

Unit 1

A 1 d 2 b 3 b 4 a

B 1 *Some possible answers:*

- a) a chilly day
- b) to dissuade someone from doing something
- c) a popular king / to crown a king
- d) up to the ears in work
- e) independent of someone / an independent country
- f) get married to someone

- 2 a) scissors – only used in plural; if you want to count scissors, you have to say, for example, ‘two pairs of scissors’.
- b) weather – uncountable
- c) teach, taught, taught; teach someone to do something; teach someone French.
- d) advice – uncountable; a piece of advice; verb = to advise (regular).
- e) lose, lost, lost
- f) trousers – only used in plural; if you want to count trousers you have to say, for example, ‘three pairs of trousers’.

- 3 a) The ‘b’ in **comb** is silent, as it is in **tomb** and **lamb** too.
- b) The final ‘e’ in **catastrophe** is pronounced as a syllable as it is in **apostrophe**. **Catastrophe**, has 4 syllables. (See Index for pronunciation)
- c) The stress is on the first syllable in **photograph**, and on the second syllable in **photographer**; it is on the third syllable in **photographical**. The ‘rule’ is that the stress in long words in English very frequently falls on the third syllable from the end of the word.

D The picture is a good clue to help you understand **tortoise**. You may recognise the word **shell** in **shelled** (as in **egg shell**, for example). Similarly, your knowledge of **life** and **long** together with the context should enable you to work out what **lifespan** and **longevity** mean. The whole context of the sentence should help you to work out the meaning of **tended**. Some of the underlined words may be similar to words in your own language which can be another useful way of working out the meaning of a word you have not seen before.

E Research into language learning can help you to prepare a sensible vocabulary learning plan. What you plan to do will, of course, depend very much on your own circumstances. You cannot realistically aim to learn as many new words a day if you are working a full day at something else as if you are doing a full-time English course. In general, however, 10 to 20 words a week is probably a reasonable aim.

It does not matter where you try to learn vocabulary but it seems to be better to do a little on a regular basis rather than a lot infrequently. Research also suggests that it is a good idea to revise your work on a very regular basis – once a week, perhaps, but do not revise only the words that you’ve learnt in that week. Look back over your work of the previous month(s).

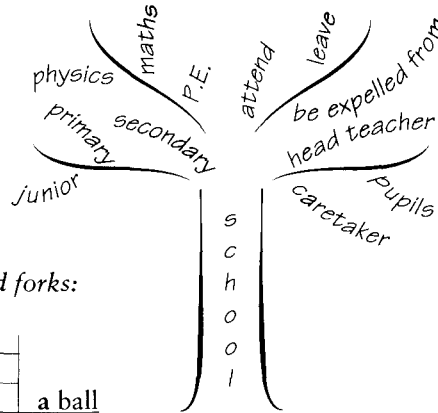
Unit 2

A 1 *Possible words to add:* purr, scratch, tomcat, tail and whiskers

- 2 a) Child, tooth and ox are all words with irregular plurals (**children**, **teeth**, **oxen**). You could add more examples, e.g. mouse (**mice**); goose (**geese**); foot (**feet**); **phenomenon** (**phenomena**).

- b) **Cut, split and burst** are all irregular verbs whose three basic forms are identical to each other (i.e. **cut, cut, cut; split, split, split and burst, burst, burst**). You could add **put, hurt** and **set** to this group.
- c) **Information, furniture and food** are all uncountable nouns – you could add **milk, money** and **work** to this group.
- 3 Possible words and expressions to add:
 a) **pricey, underpriced, price tag** b) **to lend someone a hand, a handful; a handbag, underhand, etc.**

B 1 Possible word tree for school:



2 Possible ways to complete the word forks:

magnificent	views	kick	a ball
breathtaking		hit	
superb		throw	
stunning		catch	
splendid		bounce	

- 3 a) drive b) fly c) Riding

Unit 3

- 3.1** The list is probably connected to a lesson or lessons about time or a text about someone's relationship with time. A possible organisation might include bringing the **clock** words together in a word-map or bubble diagram (**clock, wristwatch, hands, minute-hand**); other words could then be added later (**hour-hand, face/dial, digital, etc.**)

Tell the time and **What time do you make it?** could form a separate list of 'time phrases', to which others could be added, e.g. **Have you got the time?, My watch is fast/slow, etc.** **Drowsy** and **wide awake** could be treated as antonyms, and some notes about the usage of **beneath** and **under** would be useful. The list could have information about word-class too.

- 3.2** Theatre seems the obvious word.

- 3.3** Other testing systems include re-entering any word you have difficulty remembering, so that it appears more than once in the notebook. Another useful discipline is to set yourself a small, fixed number of words to memorise each week, e.g. 20, and to tick them off in the book as you do **them**. You could also take out any ten words from your book and put them on individual slips of paper which you stick in prominent places around your room or house, e.g. on the fridge door, so that you are regularly looking at them.

3.4

<i>noun</i>	<i>verb</i>	<i>adjective</i>	<i>person</i>
production	produce	productive	producer
industry	industrialise	industrial	industrialist
export	export	export	exporter

Note the change in stress from **export** (noun) to **export** (verb); adjective: **export**, e.g. Our export figures have increased; person: **exporter**.

Unit 4

4.1 Suggested answers:

- | | | | | | |
|------------|------------|----------|-------------|--------|------------|
| 1 style | situation | people | 4 extremely | mainly | frequently |
| 2 mean | be | know | 5 of | by | for |
| 3 informal | colloquial | suitable | | | |

4.2 Obviously your answers here depend on how you answered 4.1. If you chose the same words as we did, then your answers to 4.2 will be as follows:

style *C* situation *C* people *U* (Remember that it needs a plural verb.)
 mean *T, R* be *IT, IR* know *T, IR*

4.3

<i>verb</i>	<i>infinitive</i>	<i>-ing form</i>	<i>past participle</i>
define	define	defining	defined
mean	mean	meaning	meant
write	write	writing	written

- 4.4 1 root – *form* prefix – *in* suffix – *al*
 2 formal
 3 casual e.g. of dress
 4 form, formality, formless, deform, reform, reformation and so on.
 5 a) an informal occasion
 b) We use a more informal kind of English when we speak than when we write.

- 4.5 syllable onomatopoeia register colloquial pejorative collocation comma
semi-colon apostrophe (note that there are four syllables in apostrophe) hyphen
exclamation mark question mark brackets inverted commas capitals

- 4.6 1 converse 2 lavatory 3 man 4 tolerate 5 violin

- 4.7 1 terrorist 2 skinny 3 wordy 4 mean 5 cunning 6 extravagant

4.8 Some possible answers:

countable *or* abstract noun; unfamiliar *or* polysyllabic word;
 colloquial expression *or* colloquial language.

- 4.9 () brackets ? question mark ' apostrophe
 ; semi-colon – dash - hyphen
 , comma “ ” inverted commas

Unit 5

- 5.2 1 All the words are possible. Some people feel that **sofa** and **couch** are a bit 'lower class', and that **settee** is the so-called 'refined, middle-class' word. **Divan** could also be used, but its normal British English meaning is a kind of bed with a very thick base. It can also, less commonly, mean a kind of sofa with no back or arms.
 2 **Luxury** most typically collocates with **yacht**, though **ketch** (a double-masted sailing ship) would also be possible. A **dinghy** is a very small, open boat, hardly suitable for going around the world. **Sailing boat** sounds just too general here, since it covers all types of boats with sails.

- 3 **Wellingtons** is the most likely word, since they are rubber boots designed to keep the water out. **Boots** are any kind of high-sided footwear. **Bootees** suggests a kind of ankle-length shoe, fairly lightweight, usually with fur inside for cold weather, often referring to what babies wear.
- 4 **Dinghy** would be a good word here (see 2 above), though **sailing boat** would also fit, as it's quite general.

5.3 1 3 2 1.1 3 4 4 1.1

5.4 1 education 2 passport 3 length 4 liberty 5 revision 6 brother

There is no key for Unit 6.

Unit 7

- 7.1**
- 1 **kip** – to sleep / have a sleep
 - 2 a **pal** – a friend; nowadays, **mate** is perhaps the most common informal word for 'friend' in British English
 - 3 a **chap** – a man; **chap** does have associations of being a middle-class word and perhaps not used so much by young people
 - 4 **cheerio** – goodbye; **bye** and **ta-ta** (pron: /tə tu:/) are also common, **ta-ta** being the most informal
 - 5 **swot** – study hard, e.g. for an exam; you can call someone a **swot** too
 - 6 **ta** – thank you, or (slightly less formal) thanks
 - 7 **brainy** – clever / intelligent; intelligent is the most formal.

7.2 *Suggested changes:*

JIM: Annie, can you lend me five **quid**?

ANNIE: What for?

JIM: Well, I've **got** to go and see my mum and dad, and my **bike**'s not working, so I'll have to **take/get a taxi**.

ANNIE: Can't you **phone/ring/call** them and say you can't come?

JIM: Well, I could, except I want to go because they always have lots of food, and the **fridge** at our flat (or 'our place', which is a common way of talking about your house/flat) is empty, as usual.

ANNIE: Can't you **get the / go by tube**?

JIM: Erm...

ANNIE: Anyway, the answer's no.

For the sake of practice, we have created here a dialogue that probably has more of a concentration of informal words than would occur in reality. Don't forget the advice given at the beginning of the unit about using too much informal language.

- 7.3**
- 1 A teenage boy would probably say a **date** (or 'Fancy going out?'), not an **appointment** in this situation; **appointment** is for business contexts; too formal.
 - 2 **Offspring**, if the parent used it, would be heard as humorous, certainly not the normal word for this situation; **children** or **kids** (informal) would be the normal words. **Offspring** would be suitable for legal contexts, religious language and serious history books/biographies; too formal.
 - 3 As with 2, this would be heard as humorous/mock-serious. Most people would say 'I never drink' or 'I never touch alcohol' in this situation. **Alcoholic beverages** is very formal/legalistic and you might see it on, e.g. a notice prohibiting drinking in a particular place or the sale of drink at particular times; too formal.

- 4 Probably acceptable. People who work together or share an institutional context often develop a high degree of acceptable informality. Such is often the case in British universities and colleges. In such institutional settings, clippings and other short forms are widely used by everyone and operate as a sort of slang among the people involved, and are not heard as disrespectful.
- 5 The use of ads here sounds out of place compared with the formal tone of the rest of the letter ('Dear Sir/Madam... I should like to enquire... etc.'), so it is too informal. Over the phone, however, the same person might well say 'Could you tell me how much it'd cost to put an ad in your paper?' in order to create a friendly relationship with the person answering the call.

- 7.4** 1 in motion 3 a) to regret b) to purchase c) to address
2 to alight 4 Hi! Bye!

7.5 *Suggested versions:*

- 1 Children shouldn't / are asked not to drop rubbish/litter in the play-area.
- 2 You can only get your expenses/money back if you've got / if you hand in receipts with the date on.

Unit 8

- 8.1** 1 windscreen wiper(s) 5 payee
2 classical violinist 6 dishwasher (normally written as one word)
3 professional photographer 7 kidney donor
(pron: photographer) 8 addressee
4 amateur actor

- 8.2** 1 stapler 3 can-opener (or tin-opener) 5 coat-hanger
2 grinder 4 nail-clipper

- 8.4** 1 a cooker – a thing (the stove on which you cook); the person who cooks is a **cook**.
2 a typewriter – a thing (machine for typing); the person is a **typist**.
3 a ticket-holder – person or thing; a person who has a ticket, e.g. for a concert, or a kind of wallet for holding tickets, e.g. a season ticket for the train/bus.
4 a record player – a thing (machine for playing records).
5 a cleaner – person or thing; person who cleans, e.g. in an office or other place of work; a substance or instrument for cleaning, e.g. 'this cleaner will get the grease off your oven'.
6 a smoker – person or thing; a person who smokes; a short name for a seat in the smoking area of a plane or train (or the whole smoking compartment on a train).
7 a drinker – person (someone who drinks alcohol, usually regularly or in large quantities).

- 8.5** 1 forgivable 2 admission 3 laziness 4 productive 5 readable

- 8.7** 1 neighbourhood – it is a place (an area); all the others refer to human relationships.
2 step-ladder – all the others means 'thing for doing x', e.g. hair-restorer restores your hair, a plant-holder holds a plant, etc.
3 compliment – all the others are verb + 'ment', e.g. appoint + ment. There is no verb 'compl*i*'.
4 handful – all the others are adjectives; **handful** is a noun, meaning a pile of something about as big as you can hold in your hands, e.g. a handful of sand.
5 worship – all the others are kinds of human relationships; **Worship** refers to paying tribute to a God, or, figuratively, as a verb, to loving someone very very much, e.g. 'he worships his teacher'.

Unit 9

- 9.1** 1 indiscreet 4 irrelevant 7 irresponsible 10 intolerant
 2 insensitive 5 disobedient 8 ungrateful
 3 unconvincing 6 inefficient 9 disloyal
- 9.2** 1 unmarried 3 illiterate 5 impartial
 2 inedible 4 unemployed 6 irreplaceable
- 9.3** 1 unwrapping 3 disprove 5 to unload
 2 disagree 4 unveiled 6 disconnected
- 9.4** 1 microwave 3 multi-national 5 postgraduate
 2 antibiotic 4 on auto-pilot 6 subway
- 9.5** 1 mispronouncing 3 post-dated his cheque 5 rewrite it
 2 are overworked but underpaid 4 her ex-husband

9.6 *Other examples:*

<i>prefix</i>	<i>examples</i>	<i>prefix</i>	<i>examples</i>
anti	anti-government antiseptic	over	overrun overcharge
auto	autocue automobile	post	post-colonial post-industrial
bi	bi-plane bi-focals	pro	pro-Iranian pro-nuclear
ex	ex-flatmate ex-partner	pseudo	pseudo-democracy pseudo-liberal
ex	express extort	re	rephrase redefine
micro	micro-chip microprocessor	semi	semi-literate semi-conscious
mis	misspell mislead	sub	sub-editor sub-human
mono	monorail monosyllable	under	underachieve underweight
multi	multi-cultural multi-faceted		

Unit 10

10.1 The stress is on the underlined syllable in each of the words in the table.

<i>verb</i>	<i>person noun</i>	<i>adjective</i>	<i>abstract noun</i>
<u>convert</u>	<u>convert</u>	con <u>verted</u>	con <u>version</u>
<u>produce</u>	pro <u>ducer</u>	pro <u>ductive</u>	pro <u>duction</u> , <u>produce</u> , <u>product</u> , product <u>ivity</u>
<u>conduct</u>	con <u>ductor</u>	con <u>ducive</u>	<u>conduct</u> , con <u>duction</u>
<u>impress</u>	–	im <u>pressive</u>	im <u>pression</u>
<u>support</u>	suppo <u>rt</u> er	suppo <u>rtive</u>	suppo <u>rt</u>
<u>impose</u>	–	impo <u>sing</u>	impo <u>sition</u>

- 10.2** 1 oppressive 3 advertisements 5 inspector(s) 7 to advertise
 2 was deported 4 introduce 6 introductory 8 composed

- 10.3** 1 It isn't easy to find synonyms for these words; the meaning is as follows: 'She spends a lot of time thinking about her own thoughts and feelings and so does he; he's quite shy and not very talkative.'
- 2 argue against 6 made public
 3 training 7 hold down
 4 hold back 8 put...into an appropriate form
 5 work out

10.4 *Some possibilities:*

spect – circumspect behaviour; a retrospective exhibition; a fresh perspective.

vert – an extroverted person; inverted commas; to pervert the innocent.

port – a railway porter; reported speech; transportation costs.

duc, duct – to reduce taxes, to induce labour; a railway viaduct.

press – blood pressure; compressed air; an original expression.

pose, pone – to pose for a photograph; to suppose something to be true; to repose peacefully.

- 10.5** support – hold up postpone – put off oppose – go against inspect – look at
 reduce – cut down deposit – put down divert – turn away

Unit 11

- 11.1** 1 affection 5 amusement 9 attentiveness 13 equality
 2 excitement 6 grace 10 happiness 14 hope
 3 kindness 7 originality 11 popularity 15 resentment
 4 security 8 stupidity 12 weakness 16 wisdom

11.2 *Some possible answers:*

There are many more possibilities for the B suffixes but not many for the C ones.

B *-ment* (un) employment entertainment involvement requirement

-ion diversion attraction direction rejection

-ness awkwardness foolishness loveliness madness

-ity brutality familiarity productivity superiority

C *-dom* dukedom earldom

-ship citizenship chairmanship sponsorship championship

-th growth wealth stealth

-hood babyhood nationhood

- 11.3** 1 hostility or aggressiveness 5 replacement 9 sight
 2 amazement 6 stardom 10 freedom
 3 curiosity 7 reduction 11 rage
 4 brotherhood 8 neighbourhood 12 prosperity

11.4

<i>abstract noun</i>	<i>adjective</i>	<i>verb</i>	<i>adverb</i>
contentment	content(ed)	to content	contentedly
argument	argumentative	to argue	arguably
emptiness	empty	to empty	emptily
intensity	intense	to intensify	intensely
satisfaction	satisfied, satisfactory	to satisfy	satisfactorily
sentiment	sentimental	to sentimentalise	sentimentally
strength	strong	to strengthen	strongly

- 11.5** 1 Jealousy 2 Happiness 3 Hope 4 Love 5 permanence; beauty
(‘Coke’ in question 2 means the fuel produced while taking gas from coal. A migraine is a very bad headache.)

11.6 How you answer this question is a matter of your own originality. Here are some ‘real’ quotations about these abstract nouns, however:

- 1 Freedom is an indivisible word. If we want to enjoy it, and to fight for it, we must be prepared to extend it to everyone.
- 2 Friendship is unnecessary, like philosophy, like art... It has no survival value; rather it is one of those things that gives value to survival.
- 3 Life is a foreign language; all men mispronounce it.
- 4 Four be the things I’d be better without:
Love, curiosity, freckles and doubt.
- 5 Where there is no imagination, there is no horror.

Unit 12

Note that when you are looking compound adjectives up in the dictionary, you may sometimes find the word listed under its second element rather than its first. Sometimes, in some dictionaries, the word will not be listed at all if the meaning is absolutely clear from an understanding of the two elements.

Notice that the descriptions of Tom and Melissa on the left-hand page are light-hearted and far-fetched! They are not examples of good style as such long lists of adjectives would be inappropriate in a normal composition.

12.1 *Some possible answers:*

- | | | | |
|-------------|---------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1 brown | 3 broad | 5 British | 7 hot |
| bright-eyed | narrow-minded | ready-made | pig-headed |
| wide | single | home | bald |
| 2 fool | 4 polo | 6 tax | 8 kind |
| dust-proof | low-necked | problem-free | soft-hearted |
| fire | high | care | hard |

12.2 Here is one possible way of categorising the words. There will be many other ways of categorising them. What is important is not how you categorise them but the process of doing the exercise itself. The process should help you to learn the words.

Words connected with money: cut-price duty-free interest-free

Words connected with comfort, safety and convenience: air-conditioned drip-dry
hand-made remote-controlled sugar-free bullet-proof

Words connected with time: last-minute long-standing off-peak part-time
record-breaking time-consuming

Words often connected with travelling: long-distance second-class

Words often used to describe people: so-called world-famous

Odd man out: top-secret!

12.3 *Some examples:*

- | | | | |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------------|
| self-assured <i>P</i> | self-satisfied <i>N</i> | self-confident <i>P</i> | self-conscious <i>N</i> |
| self-seeking <i>N</i> | self-possessed <i>P</i> | self-indulgent <i>N</i> | self-employed <i>neutral</i> |
| self-evident <i>neutral</i> | self-sufficient <i>neutral</i> | self-willed <i>N</i> | self-effacing <i>N</i> |

- 12.4** 1 No, she’s long-sighted. 4 No, they’re flat-heeled/low-heeled.
2 No, he’s hard-up (or badly-off). 5 No, it’s hand-made.
3 No, he’s badly-behaved. 6 No, in the north-west.

12.5 *Some possible answers:*

air-conditioned car/room	off-peak travel/viewing
bullet-proof car/vest	part-time work/job
cut-price clothes/sale	record-breaking performance/jump
drip-dry shirt/sheets	remote-controlled TV/toy
duty-free perfume/cigarettes	second-class ticket/citizen
hand-made clothes/chocolates	so-called expert/specialist
interest-free credit/loan	sugar-free diet/coca cola
last-minute preparations/arrival	time-consuming work/preparations
long-distance train/runner	top-secret information/file
long-standing arrangement/relationship	world-famous film star/novelist

12.6 1 up 2 on 3 back 4 off 5 of 6 out**Unit 13****13.1** Here are words which would fit appropriately into the networks suggested.

<i>money</i>	<i>health</i>	<i>social problems</i>
luxury goods book token credit card burglar alarm income tax mail order pocket money	blood donor heart attack contact lens birth control blood pressure hay fever food poisoning junk food	race relations human rights arms race brain drain death penalty generation gap greenhouse effect welfare state air traffic control

13.2 Blood pressure and blood donor; air traffic control and birth control.

Here are some possible answers for this question. There are some other possibilities also. Check with a dictionary or a teacher if you are not sure whether your answers are correct or not.

1 record token	5 teapot	9 level-crossing
2 junk mail	6 mother country	10 footlights
3 sound bite	7 inheritance tax	11 food-processor
4 blood ties	8 word-processing	12 rat-race

13.3

1 pedestrian crossing	4 the arms race	7 the death penalty
2 the greenhouse effect	5 air traffic control	8 package holiday
3 hay fever	6 contact lens	9 handcuffs

13.4 *Suggested sentences:*

- 'I always like getting one of these so that I can choose the music I like myself.' (a record token)
- 'I get an enormous amount through the post these days.' (junk mail)
- 'They say these are thicker than water.' (blood ties)
- 'I can't understand how people find sport in killing.' (blood sports)
- 'He couldn't stand it any longer and went to be self-sufficient on a Scottish island.' (the rat-race)
- 'They had a huge amount to pay after their father died.' (inheritance tax)
- 'It is so much more efficient than using a typewriter.' (word-processing)

Unit 14

- 14.1** 1 queue of traffic 3 attempt to conceal information 5 delay to traffic
2 burglaries 4 obstacle in the way of progress 6 escape

14.2 *Some possible answers:*

- | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1 radioactive fallout | 5 final output (or outcome) |
| 2 nervous breakdown | 6 sales outlets |
| 3 computer printout | 7 positive feedback |
| 4 annual turnover | 8 drastic cutbacks |

- 14.3** 1 takeover 3 walkout 5 BREAK-OUT 7 outbreak
2 shake-up 4 input 6 check-out 8 pin-ups

- 14.4** 1 write 3 work; press 5 clear 7 turn
2 hand 4 write 6 hold 8 lie

- 14.5** 1 Outlook means prospect whereas a look-out is a person watching out for an enemy or danger.
2 Set-up means organisation whereas upset means disturbance.
3 Outlet means place where something is released whereas let-out means way of escaping from a difficult situation.
4 Outlay means amount of money spent on something whereas layout means the way something is arranged, e.g. the layout of a page or a room.

Unit 15

15.2 *Possible answers:*

inventions network: saxophone biro braille
(watt might also fit here as might some of the clothes illustrated)

politics network: machiavellian boycott pamphlet

- 15.3** 1 wellingtons (wellies); mackintosh (mac) 4 boycott
2 saxophone 5 cashmere or angora
3 bedlam

15.4 *Some possible answers:*

- | | | |
|-------------------|-----------------------|----------------|
| 1 rowdy, terrible | 3 large, wide-brimmed | 5 black, lycra |
| 2 political, free | 4 dark-eyed, wild | 6 red, chewed |

- 15.5** 1 suede boots/jacket 3 spartan furnishings/atmosphere
2 machiavellian policy/plan 4 tawdry goods/clothes

15.6 *Some possible endings for the sentences:*

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1 ...to her every whim. | 4 ...the Olympic Games. |
| 2 ...the wind was getting cooler. | 5 ...very hot to wear. |
| 3 ...round the field. | |

- 15.7** 1 A herculean effort is a major effort, one that demands a lot of strength and the word herculean comes from the name of the mythical Greek hero, Hercules, who was famed for his strength.
2 A platonic friendship is one between a man and a woman based on affection but with no sexual element (from the name of the Greek philosopher, Plato).

- 3 A **teddy bear**, the name given to the soft stuffed bear which is a popular child's toy, comes from Theodore Roosevelt, the American president. A hunter of bears, Roosevelt was once said to have saved a young bear cub. The story was illustrated by a cartoon in the Washington Post and the toy bears drew their name from the pet form of Theodore.
- 4 A **jersey**, meaning sweater or jumper, comes from the name of one of the Channel Islands, Jersey, well-known for its knitting.
- 5 **Caesarean section** is a surgical operation to remove a baby from its mother's womb. The name originates from the name of the Roman Emperor, Julius Caesar, who was reputedly born in this way.
- 6 **July**, the month, is also named after Julius Caesar.
- 7 A **bottle of champagne** is named after Champagne, the region of France where this particular type of sparkling wine is made.
- 8 An **atlas** or book of maps is named after the Greek mythological Titan, Atlas, who as a punishment for attempting to overthrow Zeus was condemned to support the world on his shoulders. One of the first atlases, that produced by Mercator in the late 16th Century, had a picture of Atlas on its cover.
- 9 Like many other plants – camellia, dahlia, freesia, begonia and so on – **magnolia** takes its name from a person. **Magnolia** comes from the French botanist, Pierre Magnol, who devised a system of classifying plants.

Unit 16

16.3 Some words which fit most obviously into the networks suggested:

<i>food</i>	<i>politics</i>	<i>the arts</i>	<i>animals</i>
yoghurt	embargo	avant-garde	mosquito
cuisine	junta	piano	poodle
gateau	guerrilla	soprano	dachshund
spaghetti	coup	ballerina	rottweiler
frankfurter	ombudsman	easel	mammoth
hamburger	perestroika	balalaika	lemming
marmalade			dodo
delicatessen			lasso
bistro			jackal
aubergine			
sauté			
sherbet			

16.4 Other networks could include:

clothes: anorak yashmak caftan shawl

things in the house: futon mattress alcove carafe duvet bidet patio

sports and hobbies: origami judo karate caravan kayak ski slalom yacht easel
waltz casino snorkel

geographical features: fjord floe tundra steppe

- 16.5**
- | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 right-wing coup | 7 total embargo |
| 2 prima ballerina | 8 long-standing vendetta |
| 3 strawberry yoghurt | 9 noisy kindergarten |
| 4 ice floe | 10 cosy duvet |
| 5 Chinese cuisine | 11 all-night casino |
| 6 long-sleeved caftan | |

- 16.6**
- | | | |
|--------------------|------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1 practise karate | 5 be a guerrilla | 9 have a siesta |
| 2 paddle a kayak | 6 live in a cul de sac | 10 go on / take a cruise |
| 3 wear mufti | 7 attempt a coup | 11 take/have a sauna |
| 4 place an embargo | 8 throw confetti | 12 attend/give/hold a seminar |

16.7 macho man/behaviour/clothes; avant-garde art/design/furniture

Unit 17

17.2 *Some possible answers:*

gr: grizzle and grudge, both have rather unpleasant meanings – grizzle is to cry because of bad temper rather than pain or discomfort and grudge is to be unwilling to give or do something.

cl: clap or clatter, both represent quite sharp sounds – clap is to applaud with your hands and clatter is to make a long, continuous resounding noise like hard metallic things falling on a hard surface.

sp: spatter or spill both have an association with liquid or powder – spatter means to splash or scatter in drips, spill means to knock over something liquid.

wh: whirl and whisk both have associations with the movement of air – whirl means to move quickly round and round and whisk means move or sweep quickly through the air.

- 17.3**
- | | | | |
|-----------|------------|-----------|-------------|
| 1 click | 3 sizzling | 5 crash | 7 splashing |
| 2 whirred | 4 clinked | 6 groaned | 8 trickling |

- 17.4**
- 1 spit (spat, spat)
 - 2 grumpy
 - 3 spit (a spit is a long, thin metal spike on which meat is put for roasting)

- 17.5**
- 1 splosh – colloquial form of splash
 - 2 gargle – wash the throat with liquid kept moving by a stream of breath
 - 3 rustle – make a gentle light sound like dry leaves in the wind or silk clothes moving
 - 4 mumble – speak softly and indistinctly
 - 5 creaks – make a sound like that of an unoiled door hinge
 - 6 whacked – hit hard

- 17.6**
- | | |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1 a gash in someone's arm | 4 someone spraying their hair |
| 2 a referee whistling | 5 someone sprinkling sugar on a cake |
| 3 someone bashing something | 6 water spurting out of the ground |

- 17.7**
- | | | |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------------------|
| schoolchildren giggle | fire crackles | the bell on a cat's collar tinkles |
| a bad-tempered person or dog growls | a bored child wriggles | a churchbell clangs |
| a steam train whistles | a prisoner's chain clanks | someone with asthma wheezes |

Unit 18

- 18.1**
- 1 They sang a psalm to honour the memory of the world-famous psychologist as she was laid to rest in the family tomb. (Note that although the 'r' in 'world' is not really pronounced, in Standard British English, it affects the way the word is pronounced.)
 - 2 The psychiatrist was knifed in the knee as he was walking home.
 - 3 He should have whistled as he fastened his sword to his belt. (Note that the 'h' in 'have' is not really pronounced when following an auxiliary verb as in this sentence and the next one.)
 - 4 You could have left me half the Christmas cake on Wednesday.

18.2 The odd one out appears first.

- | | | | |
|--------------|------------------|---------------|-------------------|
| 1 worry /ʌ/ | sorry, lorry /ɒ/ | 5 could /ʊ/ | doubt, shout /aʊ/ |
| 2 word /ɜ:/ | sword, cord /ɔ:/ | 6 plough /aʊ/ | rough, tough /ʌ/ |
| 3 dome /əʊ/ | come, some /ʌ/ | 7 wand /ɒ/ | land, sand /æ/ |
| 4 plead /i:/ | head, tread /e/ | 8 root /u:/ | soot, foot /ʊ/ |

18.3 1 cup 2 allow 3 now 4 threw 5 off 6 go

- 18.4** 1 transfer; transferring 5 increased; decrease
2 suspected; suspect 6 permit; permits
3 conflicting; conflict 7 record; record
4 upset; upset 8 conduct; conducting

18.5 1 muscle 3 handkerchief 5 subtle 7 height
2 catastrophe 4 chemical 6 receipt 8 recipe

- 18.6** 1 photograph, photography, photographer, photographically
2 telephone, telephonist
3 zoology, zoologist, zoological
4 arithmetic, arithmetical, arithmetician
5 psychology, psychologist, psychological
6 psychiatry, psychiatric, psychiatrist

18.7 Keep this question in mind as you continue with your English studies. Whenever you come across a word whose pronunciation seems strange, write it down with its phonetic transcription too.

Unit 19

- 19.1** 1 The girl I live (give) with knows a good pub with live (dive) music.
2 The main house (mouse) houses (rouse) a collection of rare stamps.
3 They bathed (path) the children after they had bathed (lathe) in the sea.
4 You sow (glow) the seeds while I feed the sow. (cow)
5 The violinist in the bow (flow) tie made a bow. (allow)
6 He's the lead (deed) singer in the group 'Lead (head) piping'.
7 What a row (plough) from the last house in the row! (though)
8 Does he still suffer from his war wound? (mooned)
9 I wound (round) the rope around the tree to strengthen it against the gale.
10 It's quite hard to wind (find) in the sails in this wind. (tinned)

- 19.2** 1 waste 3 pane 5 allowed 7 through; phase
2 sole 4 heir 6 practise 8 peel

19.3 Possible answers:

- 1 They're going to take their aunt to have dinner there this evening.
- 2 It's the first time the car has left its garage this year.
- 3 Let's practise with these grammar exercises first and then do some vocabulary practice.
- 4 It's great to see such a lovely fire burning in the grate.
- 5 Don't whine so much, just because the wine's finished.
- 6 He has sought a job of this sort for ages.
- 7 The archaeological site was a marvellous sight at sunset.
- 8 Let us pray that we may never be prey to evil thoughts.
- 9 Although she was a little hoarse, it did not put her off horse riding in the snow.
- 10 The beautiful sight of the moon's rays reflected in the lake did a great deal to raise her spirits.

Note: Most sentences in 'real' English avoid using homophones as they are confusing.

- 19.4**
- 1 You're too young to smoke.
This is a play on words on the two meanings of **smoke** – to smoke a cigarette and a fire or chimney smokes (i.e give out smoke).
 - 2 I think I'm going down with something.
This is a play on words on two meanings of **going down**. There is the literal meaning go down (descend) and then there is the expression, 'go down with an illness', which means be at the start of an attack of that illness.
 - 3 Let's play draughts.
This is a play on words on the two meanings of **draughts**. One is the game played with round counters and a chess board and the other is a current of air as in 'There's a terrible draught coming from under the door'.
 - 4 He wanted to draw the curtains.
This is a play on words on two meanings of **draw**. The first means make a picture and the second means pull.
 - 5 Because it's full of dates.
This is a play on words on the two meanings of **dates**. One refers to 1066, 1892 and all that and the other to a sweet fruit coming from a kind of palm tree or to an evening spent together by two people (usually romantic).
 - 6 A drum takes a lot of beating.
This is a play on words on two meanings of **beating**. A drummer beats a drum. There is also an expression, 'takes a lot of beating' which means 'is hard to improve on'.
 - 7 Because it's got a tender behind.
This is a play on words on two meanings of two words – **tender** and **behind**. **Tender** can mean either susceptible to pain, or a wagon for fuel and water behind a steam locomotive. **Behind** is normally, of course, a preposition but it can also be an informal noun meaning 'bottom', as in the part of the body that a person sits on.
 - 8 A nervous wreck.
A **wreck** is a boat or ship that, for example, hits a rock and sinks to the bottom of the sea. A **nervous wreck**, however, is an expression commonly used to describe someone who is extremely nervous.

Unit 20

- 20.1**
- | | | | |
|-------------|---------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| 1 Prior | 3 By the time | 5 Previously/Earlier | 7 When/Once/After |
| 2 Till then | 4 While/When | 6 As soon as | 8 The moment/minute |

Other possible sentences:

While she was in Paris, she missed home a lot.

She went to the theatre **after** she'd been to the Pompidou Centre.

While driving home from Glasgow, she saw a bad accident on the motorway.

Prior to going on to Glasgow, she was in Manchester.

- 20.2** *Possible answers:*

- 1 ... I usually dream a lot.
- 2 ... I usually feel guilty and go on a diet for a while.
- 3 ... look at the clock to see what time it is.
- 4 ... lived in the same house.
- 5 ... reading a story.
- 6 ... go back home and look for a job.
- 7 ... double-check that everything is booked.
- 8 ... upset and want to make it up as soon as possible.

Unit 21

- 21.1**
- 1 as long as / providing / provided that are all okay; on condition that is fine too, and sounds a little stronger.
 - 2 In case of; you can also say In the event of, which is often seen in notices and regulations.
 - 3 Unless
 - 4 Since this is legal/official language on condition that would be very suitable, or providing / provided that; so long as is also possible, but as long as sounds just a little too informal.
 - 5 Supposing or What if (less tentative, more direct).
- 21.2** *Suggested sentences:*
- 1 You cannot enter unless you have an Entry Visa. or You may enter providing / provided that you have an Entry Visa.
 - 2 You may go on to university as long as you get 70% or more in the exam. or Unless you get 70%, you cannot go on to university.
 - 3 You can't come in unless you're over 18. or You may enter the club providing you are over 18.
 - 4 Visitors may enter the mosque on condition that they remove their shoes. or You may go in as long as you take off your shoes.
- 21.3**
- 1 No matter where she goes, she always takes that dog of hers.
 - 2 If anyone rings, I don't want to speak to them, whoever it is.
 - 3 Whatever I do, I always seem to do the wrong thing.
 - 4 It'll probably have meat in it, no matter which dish you choose. They don't cater for non-meat eaters here.
 - 5 However I do it, that recipe never seems to work.
- 21.4** *Some possible answers:*
- 1 For the authors of this book, who are teachers, the prerequisites are a degree and a teaching qualification.
 - 2 Many people might move if they were offered a good job in another part of the country, or if a motorway was going to be built at the bottom of their garden!
 - 3 In Britain, the normal entry requirements are A-level exam passes in relevant subjects. (A-levels are exams taken at 18 years old.)
 - 4 For most people it would be a good idea to make the condition that the person should pay for any breakages, keep the place clean and perhaps pay coal/gas/oil/electricity and phone bills.

Unit 22

- 22.1** *Suggested answers:*
- 1 The announcement provoked/generated a strong attack from the opposition.
 - 2 The new Act of Parliament has brought about / led to great changes in industry.
 - 3 The train crash was caused by / due to a signalling fault.
 - 4 A violent storm caused the wall to collapse. or Owing to a violent storm, the wall collapsed.
 - 5 The food shortages sparked off riots in several cities.
 - 6 The food shortages stemmed from / arose out of poor management of the economy.
- 22.2**
- 1 The reason I didn't contact you was (because) I'd lost your phone number. or My reason for not contacting you was... (this is also acceptable, but sounds more formal).
 - 2 I will not sign, on the grounds that this contract is illegal.
 - 3 The aim of the new law the government passed was to control prices. or The government passed a new law with the aim of / with a view to controlling prices.
 - 4 I wonder what her motives were in sending everyone flowers.
 - 5 The high salary prompted her to apply for the job.

22.3 Possible answers:

- 1 There were awful blizzards, which caused the road to be blocked.
- 2 Owing to the fact that the performance was cancelled, everyone got a refund.
- 3 The service was terribly slow. Consequently, all the customers got angry.
- 4 We missed the last bus. As a result we had to walk home.

22.4 1 for 2 of 3 with; of 4 in 5 out of 6 with; to 7 given; to

Unit 23

23.1 Suggested answers:

- 1 I accept (or more formal: I acknowledge) that you weren't solely to blame, but you must take *some* responsibility. (Accept and acknowledge are most suitable here since the speaker is prepared to agree with one aspect but wants to go on to make another point to support his/her case.)
- 2 Okay, I admit I was wrong, you were right; he *is* a nice guy. (This seems to be a situation where somebody is accusing someone or trying to get them to say they were wrong. Admit is ideal in this case.)
- 3 The company acknowledges that you have suffered some delay, but we do not accept liability. (Acknowledge is perhaps best here; it is often used in formal, legalistic situations like this because it simply says 'We understand your message, but we do *not* necessarily accept any blame/responsibility'; admit might suggest the company *does* accept legal responsibility; accept is also possible though less formal.)
- 4 She accepted / conceded that we had done all we could, but she was still not content. (Concede usually suggests an argument or debate where people might 'give' small points to one another while still holding on to their basic position, and would seem to be a likely choice here; concede here suggests she did not really want to say it.)

23.2 Possible answers:

- 2 The house itself is rather small.
- 3 Jim: Isn't the *Plaza* rather expensive?
- 4 In most of the rest of Europe, the traffic drives on the right. (Ireland also drives on the left.)
- 5 I'm not at all hungry, thanks.

23.3

Across	Down
1 yawning	2 apart
3 world	4 divide
5 huge	6 gap
7 poles	

Possible comments using the phrases:

- 1 There's a great divide between those who believe in the nuclear deterrent, and those who believe in world disarmament.
- 2 There's a huge discrepancy between what she says and what she does.
- 3 Jim and Sandra are poles apart when it comes to believing in God.
- 4 There's a world of difference between being a student and being a teacher.

23.4 Suggested answers:

- | | |
|----------------------------|----------------------|
| 1 that's all well and good | 3 for all that |
| 2 After all | 4 It's all very well |

23.5

- 1 on the contrary (it's *not* true that I'm worried)
- 2 on the other hand (it *is* true that it's expensive)

Unit 24

24.1 *Suggested answers:*

- 1 Further to
- 2 In addition to / As well as / Apart from / Besides
- 3 etc. / and so on
- 4 in addition to / as well as / apart from / besides
- 5 Furthermore / Moreover / Likewise

Comments: In (2) and (4), the choice is quite wide, but, depending on which one she chooses for (2), the writer would probably then choose a different one, to avoid repeating herself, for (4).

In (5), if she wanted to use *what's more*, the writer would probably write it in full as *what is more*, so as not to sound too informal. However, *what's more* / *what is more* can often sound a little abrupt and argumentative (as if you're trying very hard to convince the reader) and might sound just a bit too strong here.

In (3), *etc.* is slightly more formal than *and so on*, and the writer may well wish to avoid sounding too informal.

In (5), *furthermore* / *moreover* add her previous experience on to the rest; *likewise* not only adds the information but suggests it is of quite equal value to the other experience she has mentioned. *Equally* would not be suitable here, as it is best used when arguing points (trying to convince someone of the equal value of a point added on to other points).

- 24.2**
- 1 Physical labour can exhaust the body very quickly. Equally, excessive study can rapidly reduce mental powers.
 - 2 My cousin turned up, along with some schoolmates of his.
 - 3 As well as owning a big chemical factory, he runs a massive oil business in the USA. *or* He owns a big chemical factory as well as running a massive oil business in the USA.
 - 4 She was my teacher and she was a good friend into the bargain.
 - 5 In addition to being their scientific adviser, I also act as consultant to the Managing Director.

- 24.3**
- 1 I work part-time as well as **being** a student, so I have a busy life.
 - 2 Besides **having** a good job, my ambition is to meet someone nice to share my life with.
 - 3 Alongside **my** many other responsibilities, I now have to be in charge of staff training.
 - 4 In addition to a degree, *or* In addition to **having** a degree, she also has a diploma.
 - 5 My father won't agree. **Likewise**, my mother's sure to find something to object to.
 - 6 She is a good footballer and she's a good athlete to **boot**.
 - 7 He said he'd have to first consider the organisation, then the system, then the finance **and so on and so forth**.

- 24.4** 1 to boot 2 into the bargain 3 plus (+) 4 on top of (all) that

Unit 25

- 25.1** 1 fact 2 issue 3 belief 4 problem 5 evaluation 6 view

- 25.2**
- 1 issue (best here because it is something everyone is debating **and** disagreeing on, **question** and **problem** are also okay)
 - 2 problem/matter; **crisis** if it is really serious.
 - 3 question (**mystery** would also be possible)
 - 4 topic
 - 5 approach/response/solution/answer

- 25.3**
- 1 Situation in Sahel worsening daily
 - 2 Scientist rejects claims over fast food
 - 3 Prime Minister sets out views on European union
 - 4 New approach to cancer treatment
 - 5 Solution to age-old mystery in Kenya
 - 6 New argument over economic recession

Unit 26

- 26.1**
- 1 no article 2 no article 3 an 4 no article 5 no article
 - 6 no article; if you said **a film** here it would sound as if you mean one film, and then suddenly change your mind and decide to buy five rolls.
 - 7 no article in both cases
- 26.2** *Uncountables:* clothing information advice travel work baggage
Countables: garment fact tip trip job case
- 26.3** *Some uncountable items you might put into your suitcase:*
 soap toothpaste make-up underwear clothing writing-paper film medicine
- 26.4**
- 1 We had such terrible weather that we left the camp-site and got accommodation in town instead.
 - 2 In the North of England, most houses are made of stone, but in the South, brick is more common.
 - 3 I love antique furniture, but I would need advice from a specialist before I bought any. My knowledge in that area is very poor.
 - 4 Her research is definitely making great progress these days. She has done a lot of original work recently.
- 26.5** *Possible answers:*
 A soldier needs a lot of courage, determination, stamina, loyalty and a lot of training.
 A nurse needs a lot of patience and goodwill. A bit of charm also helps, and a lot of commitment and training is needed.
 A teacher needs great patience, a lot of energy, a bit of creativity, intelligence and some training.
 An explorer needs a lot of stamina, courage and determination, as well as energy.
 An actor needs a lot of creativity and talent, and some training.
 An athlete needs great stamina and determination, and a lot of commitment.
 A writer needs a lot of creativity, talent and a bit of intelligence.
 A surgeon needs experience, patience and a lot of training.
 A receptionist needs charm, goodwill, reliability and energy.
- 26.6**
- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Could I have some vinegar? | Could I have some sellotape? |
| Could I have a duster? | Could I have a tea-bag? |
| Could I have a needle? | Could I have some polish? |
| Could I have some thread? | |

Unit 27

- 27.2** 1 shears 6 binoculars
2 (weighing) scales 7 pincers/pliers (pliers are usually best for electrical jobs, e.g. cutting wires/cables)
3 scissors 8 handcuffs
4 braces
5 tweezers

27.3 knickers trousers tights shorts dungarees

- 27.4** 1 pyjamas 3 acoustics 5 jodhpurs
2 proceeds 4 whereabouts 6 authorities; goods

27.5 1 trousers 2 billiards 3 scissors 4 dungarees

27.6 I decided that if I wanted to be a pop star I'd have to leave home and get lodgings in London. I finally got a room, but it was on the outskirts of the city. The owner didn't live on the premises, so I could make as much noise as I liked. The acoustics in the bathroom were fantastic, so I practised there. I made so much noise I almost shook the foundations! I went to the headquarters of the Musicians' Union, but a guy there said I just didn't have good enough looks to be famous. Oh well, never mind!

Unit 28

- 28.1** 1 Yes, most people have a cloth somewhere in the kitchen to wipe the work surfaces and in case somebody spills something.
2 It is not likely that most people will have a wood. A wood is a rather big area of land covered with trees (a small forest).
3 Most people do not keep iron (the material) in their homes, but they may have some things made of iron, such as a frying pan.
4 A lot of people have a fish (or several fish) swimming around in a tank in their living room.
5 Most people have pepper (together with salt) in their kitchen or dining room.
6 Most homes have glass somewhere, usually in the windows.
7 Most people have paper somewhere, for writing letters and notes, or for wrapping parcels.
8 You would have a tape if you have a tape recorder or a video recorder, and you'd probably keep it near the machine.
9 Only people who consume alcohol would have drink in their house; they'd probably keep it in a cocktail cabinet or a cupboard.
10 A rubber is quite common. It is used for rubbing out writing done in pencil, and would be kept with pens and pencils.

28.2 *Suggested answers:*

- | | |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1 Can I borrow an iron? | 4 Can I borrow some paper? |
| 2 Can I have some pepper? | 5 Can I borrow a rubber? |
| 3 Can I have a chocolate? | 6 Can I have a glass? |

28.3 *Possible answers:*

- 1 I rode over some glass. or There was glass in the road.
- 2 No, she's living in a home now.
- 3 Perhaps he should get a trade, become a carpenter or something.
- 4 Well, it had a lot of land with it.
- 5 It's a very famous work of art, a painting.
- 6 Well, look at the policy; that should tell you everything.

- 28.4** 1 **Some sauce** here means bottled sauce, such as tomato ketchup. A **sauce** means a specially prepared sauce to go with a particular dish, e.g. a white sauce, a cheese sauce.
- 2 **Plant** means very heavy equipment, e.g. heavy machinery for building. A **plant** means a botanical plant for cultivation. A **plant** can also mean a factory or large installation, e.g. a nuclear power plant – a place where electricity is generated.
- 3 **Light** (uncountable) usually means light to see by, e.g. electric light or a torch. Used countably in the request ‘Can I have / can you give me a **light**?’ it usually refers to a match or lighter to light a cigarette or pipe.

Unit 29

- 29.1** 1 swarms 2 shoal 3 gang 4 pack 5 team
- 29.2** 1 swimmers 2 a book 3 a hospital 4 cats 5 pigs
- 29.3** 1 a clump of fir-trees 5 a row of houses
2 a range of mountains 6 a heap of bed-linen
3 a gang of schoolkids 7 a herd of elephants
4 a swarm of midges
- 29.4** 1 There’s a stack of tables in the next room.
2 There’s a crowd of people waiting outside.
3 The staff are very well-paid.
4 A flock of sheep had escaped from a field.
5 She gave me a set of six sherry glasses.
6 She gave me a bunch of beautiful roses *or* a beautiful bunch of roses.
- 29.5** a whole host of a barrage of a string of a series of

Unit 30

- 30.1** 1 a stroke of luck 5 a flash of lightning
2 a shower of rain 6 a blade of grass
3 an article of clothing 7 an item of news
4 a lump of coal 8 a rumble of thunder
- 30.2** 1 My mother gave me a piece of advice which I have always remembered.
2 Suddenly a gust of wind almost blew him off his feet.
3 We had a spell of terribly windy weather last winter.
4 Would you like another slice of toast?
5 He never does a stroke of work in the house.
6 Let’s go into the garden – I need a breath of fresh air.
7 I can give you an important bit of information about that.
8 We could see a cloud of smoke hovering over the city from a long way away.
9 There is an interesting new piece of equipment in that catalogue.
10 I need to get some pieces of furniture for my flat.
- 30.3** 1 emergency 2 health 3 disrepair 4 uncertainty 5 poverty

30.5 Possible sentences:

- 1 We moved over a month ago but we are still in a state of chaos.
- 2 The company has been going through a state of flux for some months now as two chairmen have died in rapid succession.
- 3 Everything seems to be in an impossible state of confusion at the moment but I'm sure it'll all be sorted out before the wedding.
- 4 It is not unusual for job candidates to get themselves into a terrible state of tension before a final interview.

Unit 3 I

31.1

- | | | | | | |
|---|--|------------|-------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 1 | Argentinian | Venezuelan | Costa Rican | Panamanian | Mexican |
| | Peruvian (note the v) | Ecuadorian | Bolivian | Uruguayan | Paraguayan etc. |
| 2 | Ukrainian | Serbian | Croatian | Slovenian | Bulgarian |
| | Albanian | Mongolian | Moldavian | Hungarian etc. | Rumanian |
| 3 | <i>Other groupings:</i> -i adjectives seem to be Middle Eastern or Muslim countries (except Israeli); three of the -ese adjectives are oriental. | | | | |

31.2 Possible answers:

- | | | |
|----------------------------|---------------------|------|
| 1 Mao-Tse Tung | 3 Pope John Paul II | 5 U2 |
| 2 Nelson or Winnie Mandela | 4 Luciano Pavarotti | |

31.3

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1 Panama → Panamanian /pænə'meɪnɪən/ | 4 Jordan → Jordanian /dʒɔː'deɪnɪən/ |
| 2 Cyprus → Cypriot /'sɪprɪət/ | 5 Egypt → Egyptian /'dʒɪptʃən/ |
| 3 Ghana → Ghanaian /ɡɑː'neɪən/ | 6 Fiji → Fijian /fɪ'dʒiːən/ |

31.4

- 1 Madonna to marry a **Frenchman**? Hollywood sensation! (Note how Frenchman is normally
written as one word. French woman is usually two words.)
2 **Britons** have highest tax rate in EC
3 **Vietnamese** refugees leave Hong Kong camps
4 Police arrest **Dane** on smuggling charge
5 **Iraqi** delegation meets **Pakistani** President

31.5

- 1 Malays, Chinese (or various ethnic sub-types), and Indians (many are Tamils and Sikhs).
- 2 If we take Scandinavia as strictly the geographical peninsula, then Sweden and Norway are the only countries completely in Scandinavia. If we consider it more as a language family, then Denmark and Iceland can be added, and if as a cultural family, then Finland can be added too.
- 3 Approximate populations are China: 975,000,000; India: 638,000,000; USA: 218,000,000; Indonesia: 141,000,000; Brazil: 116,000,000. The former Soviet Union used to be third, with 260,000,000 (source: *The Times Atlas*)
- 4 A difficult question! However, most linguists seem to agree on around 5,000 mutually incomprehensible tongues. There are, of course, many many more dialects.
- 5 Kiribati is an independent country in the middle of the Pacific Ocean. It has only about 57,000 people.
- 6 Inuit is an Eskimo language, and its speakers may be found in Northern Canada.
- 7 Languages most widely spoken, in the following order, are Chinese, English, Spanish, Hindi, Arabic (source: *The Cambridge Encyclopedia of Language* CUP)

Unit 32

32.1 Some of these combinations form one solid word and some remain as two words.

- | | | | | | | | |
|---|-----------------|---|----------|---|------------|---|--------------|
| 1 | thunderstorm | 3 | downpour | 5 | hailstones | 7 | gale warning |
| 2 | torrential rain | 4 | heatwave | 6 | snowdrift | | |

32.2 1 slush 2 sleet 3 frost 4 blizzards 5 snowdrifts 6 thaws 7 melts

32.3 *Possible answers:*

- 1 There was a heatwave in July. *or* It was scorching/boiling (hot) last month.
- 2 It was terribly muggy and humid as we worked.
- 3 It's absolutely stifling today.
- 4 There was ice/snow/slush on the roads this morning.
- 5 We had terrible floods that winter.
- 6 There was a heavy blizzard that night.
- 7 Do you remember how mild it was that year?
- 8 There was a very bad drought that summer.
- 9 Suddenly there was a very strong gust of wind.
- 10 After the hurricane/gale, the damage was unbelievable.
- 11 There was a very dense fog that morning.

32.4 1 *bad:* too dry, a drought, or frost *good:* mild weather just after rain
2 *bad:* cold weather or windy weather or wet weather
 good: warm, mild, or even cool (if it has been a terribly hot day) and preferably dry
3 *bad:* gales, high winds, hurricanes, storms, wet weather, mist/fog
 good: clear, sunny dry, breezy weather
4 *bad:* cold, wet and windy weather or humid, muggy weather *good:* fine, dry, but not too hot
5 *bad:* wet, windy, snowy weather *good:* dry, no wind, warm nights
6 *bad:* fog/mist, rain *good:* clear, dry, sunny weather

Unit 33

33.1 *Suggested answers:*

- 1 ... the fair, bald guy. *or* straight/curly-haired man.
- 2 ... scruffy and untidy.
- 3 ... that slim, dark-haired woman over there.
- 4 ... unattractive, in fact. (You could also say he/she was 'rather plain' or 'rather ordinary', if you felt they were neither attractive nor unattractive. 'Ugly' is a very strong word indeed, and could be offensive.)
- 5 ... a teenager/ in her twenties. (Another useful word is 'she's only a youngster', for a person who is a teenager or who is still very young.)

33.2 1 The author who wrote this exercise is tall, with brown hair which is going grey; he's white, in his forties and thinks he's good looking! What about you?

33.3 stocky build overweight middle-aged round-faced good-looking
long-haired long-legged (pronounced /'legɪd/) well-dressed mixed race
tanned complexion (tanned = brown from the sun)

33.4 *Suggested answers:*

Ian Prowse, height 6ft, thin-faced, dark, curly hair, fair skin.
 Sandra King, height 5'4, dark, wavy hair, stocky build, round-faced.
 Louise Fox, age 7, Asian, straight, dark hair.
 Jake 'Dagger' Flagstone, 6ft, bald, with beard and moustache; muscular build.

Unit 34**34.1** *Opposites:*

- | | | |
|-----------------------------|------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 clever – half-witted | 3 rude – courteous | 5 generous – tight-fisted |
| 2 extroverted – introverted | 4 cruel – kind-hearted | 6 unsociable – gregarious |

- | | | | |
|---------------------|------------|------------|------------|
| 34.2 1 likes | 3 likes | 5 dislikes | 7 dislikes |
| 2 likes | 4 dislikes | 6 dislikes | 8 likes |

- | | |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 34.3 1 Di's very stingy. | 5 Dick's quite assertive. |
| 2 Molly's usually brusque. | 6 I find Dave self-assured. |
| 3 Liz's quite unprincipled. | 7 Don't you think Jim's inquiring? |
| 4 Sam can be assertive. | 8 Jill is peculiar. |

- | | | | |
|------------------------|---------------|-----------------|-------------|
| 34.4 1 sociable | 3 assertive | 5 extravagant | 7 sensitive |
| 2 pessimistic | 4 inquisitive | 6 argumentative | |

34.5 *Possible questions:*

- 1 thrifty – Do you always keep old pieces of string in case they come in handy (might be useful)?
- 2 blunt – If a friend asks you if you like her awful new dress, would you say 'No'?
- 3 sensible – If you won a lot of money, would you put it in the bank rather than spend it on a luxury you have always wanted?
- 4 intelligent – Can you give the next letter in this sequence S, M, T, W, T, F? (If you are not sure of the answer, think of the days of the week.)
- 5 even-tempered – If someone spills soup on some new clothes of yours, do you just sigh and say 'That's life'?
- 6 original – Do you never wear blue jeans?
- 7 obstinate – Do you become even more determined to do something, if people try to persuade you not to?

34.6 *Possible answers:*

- 1 self-confident – She's very-confident; speaking in public never bothers her at all.
 self-centred – I've never met anyone as self-centred as he is; he thinks the world revolves around him alone.
 self-indulgent – Buying a box of chocolates just for yourself is very self-indulgent.
- 2 bad-tempered – She's always bad-tempered first thing in the morning although she's very good-natured at other times.
 good-tempered – The dog is far too good-tempered to be much use as a watchdog.
 quick-tempered – She's very quick-tempered, she gets very angry at the slightest provocation.
- 3 narrow-minded – It's surprising how narrow-minded he is given the fact that he is so well-travelled.
 single-minded – He's totally single-minded; he never thinks of anything but work.
 open-minded – I'm sure she won't be shocked; she's far too open-minded.

Unit 35

- 35.1**
- 1 This is Jack. He's my flatmate. *or* He and I are flatmates.
 - 2 My grandad still writes to his old (*or* former) shipmates.
 - 3 We were classmates in 1978, weren't we? *or* You were a classmate of mine...
 - 4 She's not really a friend, she's just a workmate.
- 35.2** *Some possible answers:*
- John Silver and Lorna Fitt were colleagues in 1984–5.
Josh Yates is Eve Cobb's ex-husband.
Eve Cobb is Josh Yates' ex-wife.
Eve Cobb used to be Bill Nash's flatmate.
Bill Nash and John Silver are colleagues.
Ada Brigg and Nora Costa were Olympic team-mates. (usually written with a hyphen because 'm' is written twice)
Ana Wood is Bill Nash's partner. (*or* vice-versa)
Nora Costa and Ada Brigg were classmates.
Bill Nash and Eve Cobb were flatmates.
Bill Nash is Eve Cobb's ex-flatmate. (*or* vice-versa)
Fred Parks and Ada Brigg were once acquaintances.
- 35.3**
- 1 A teenage music fan might not see eye to eye with his/her parents, might worship or idolise a pop star, might dislike, but might (secretly!) respect a strict teacher, and probably likes or even loves his/her mates.
 - 2 A secretary might like another secretary, might or might not get on well with them, might despise or hate their boss, or perhaps look up to him/her, and might fancy a very attractive workmate, because that person turns them on.
 - 3 A 45-year-old may well dislike teenagers or look down on them, or fancy them if they are attractive; he/she might be repelled by their ex-husband/wife, or might still fancy them.
- 35.4**
- 1 Jo and Phil don't see eye to eye. *or* ... don't get on with each other.
 - 2 I fell out with my parents.
 - 3 We had a quarrel but now we've made it up.
 - 4 Do you think Jim and Nora are having an affair?
 - 5 I get on very well with my colleagues at work.
 - 6 She should learn to respect her elders.
 - 7 Jo's attractive, but her mate just turns me off completely.

Unit 36

- 36.1**
- 1 a garden shed or a garage
 - 2 a kitchen or dining-room drawer
 - 3 a bathroom cabinet (dental floss is a kind of thread for cleaning between your teeth)
 - 4 a wardrobe
 - 5 a cupboard, or perhaps an attic
 - 6 a kitchen or utility room
 - 7 usually in every room
 - 8 in front of one of the entrance doors (front or back)
 - 9 in the kitchen, probably in a drawer
 - 10 in the loft or in the cellar, or in a shed
- 36.2**
- | | |
|--|--------------------|
| 1 attic or loft; in this picture it looks more like a loft, where things are stored. | 3 the hall |
| 2 landing | 4 utility room |
| | 5 pantry or larder |

- 36.3**
- 1 cellar (or perhaps **basement**, though they normally have windows)
 - 2 power point (or you can also say **socket**)
 - 3 coaster
 - 4 bin-liners
 - 5 loft (attic is also possible)
 - 6 shed/garage; terrace/patio (or **balcony**; or **verandah**, if it is covered)
 - 7 landing
 - 8 bungalow

36.5 *Suggested answers:*

- 1 You could use a grater (or a food-processor).
- 2 A dust-pan and brush (perhaps followed by a vacuum-cleaner).
- 3 A table-mat.
- 4 Use the remote-control.

Unit 37

37.1 *Suggested answers:*

- 1 My car broke down / wouldn't start.
- 2 Our washing machine broke down / stopped working.
- 3 Maybe the door-handle has come off, or something that was held on with a screw or screws.
- 4 Oh dear! I've cut my finger. It's bleeding.
- 5 The batteries have run down on my radio/walkman.
- 6 I seem to have mislaid my glasses / false teeth / slippers, etc.

- 37.2**
- 1 break down – this means to 'fail mechanically'; **break** and **smash** both mean to break physically.
 - 2 stain – means to 'leave a mark'; **run out** and **stop** can both refer to things failing to work, e.g. the clock has stopped; the batteries have run out.
 - 3 leak – refers to liquids; **come off** and **chip** can both refer to small pieces falling off an object.
 - 4 flood – refers to an excess of water; **cut** and **bruise** are both types of injury.

37.3 *Possible answers:*

- 1 Contact the bank / credit agency and get them to cancel it at once.
- 2 Apologise and offer to get them a new one.
- 3 Sew it back on again.
- 4 Get it repaired.
- 5 Put an ice-cube on it. (There are lots of remedies for this, including rubbing good butter on it!)
- 6 Put it right by moving the hands forward.

37.4 *Things that typically go together:*

	<i>cake-tin</i>	<i>vase</i>	<i>elbow</i>	<i>clock</i>	<i>moped</i>	<i>sink</i>
banged			✓			
cracked		✓				
broken down					✓	
dented	✓					
stopped				✓		
blocked						✓

- 37.5**
- 1 ... overslept.
 - 2 ... locked myself out.
 - 3 ... mislaid her number.
 - 4 ... broken down. (It could also be **jammed** which means mechanically stuck, e.g. by some broken film.)
 - 5 ... fell and twisted my ankle / cut my leg/knee, etc.

Unit 38

- 38.1**
- 1 Drought; if the plants and trees are **withered**, they are probably dying because they have no water, and since the earth is cracked (hard, with a pattern of deep lines over it), it suggests it is very dry.
 - 2 Earthquake; a **tremor** is a trembling movement of the earth. Note how disasters of various kinds can **strike**, e.g. The hurricane **struck** the coastline at noon.
 - 3 A violent storm or wind, a hurricane/typhoon/tornado; if you **board up** your house you cover the windows and doors with wooden boards to protect them.
 - 4 War/a battle of some kind; **shells** and **mortars** are projectiles which cause explosions **when they strike**.
 - 5 Probably a plane crash; people who witness such crashes often describe the explosion as a **fire-ball**, or **ball of fire**.
 - 6 Probably a flood, since if your house is flooded, the natural thing to do is to go to the upper floor(s) or the roof to escape the water.

38.2

<i>verb</i>	<i>noun: thing or idea</i>	<i>noun: person</i>
explode	explosion	–
survive	survival	survivor
injure	injury	the injured
starve	starvation	the starving
erupt	eruption	–

- 38.3**
- 1 getting worse (**spreads**)
 - 2 becoming more serious/heading for a major disaster (a **time-bomb** ticks like a clock and eventually explodes)
 - 3 a disaster was avoided (the bomb was **defused** – made safe)
 - 4 disaster avoided (a **crash-landing** is an emergency landing when the pilot has no proper control over the plane, e.g. without wheels if the undercarriage fails to drop.)
 - 5 getting better (the oil is **receding** – going away from where it was heading, for example, towards a beach)
 - 6 disaster has occurred/is occurring (if you **heed** a warning, you take note, and do something; here the warning was ignored)

- 38.4** 1 victims 2 refugees 3 casualties 4 survivors 5 dead; wounded

- 38.5** 1 malaria 2 leprosy 3 cholera or typhoid 4 rabies 5 yellow fever

Unit 39

- 39.2**
- | | |
|-----------------|----------------------------|
| 1 primary | 5 further/higher |
| 2 nursery | 6 evening classes |
| 3 grammar | 7 grant |
| 4 comprehensive | 8 teacher-training college |

- 39.3**
- 1 I'm **taking/doing/sitting** an exam tomorrow.
 - 2 I hear you **passed/did well in** your examination.
 - 3 You can **study** a lot of different **subjects** / **take** a lot of different **courses** at this university.
 - 4 I got some good **marks/grades** in my continuous assessment this term.
 - 5 She's a **teacher** in a primary school. (Professors are only in universities and are very senior teachers.)
 - 6 He gave an interesting 45-minute **lecture** on Goethe. (A **conference** is a meeting of people with the same interests, usually lasting several days.)
 - 7 She got a **diploma** in personnel management. (Only universities can give degrees.)

39.4 *Possible questions:*

- 1 Do students in your country get a grant?
- 2 What's the difference between a university and a polytechnic in Britain?
- 3 What goes on at play-schools and nursery schools?
- 4 Why did you choose a teacher-training college instead of a university?
- 5 What's the school-leaving age in Britain now?
- 6 You look terribly tired. What've you been doing?
- 7 Do you get marks/credits/points for your exams?
- 8 Did you skip yesterday's lecture?

- 39.5** You could look up these things in an encyclopaedia, or else write to your American Embassy and ask them to send you information about education in the USA. Broadly speaking a **high school** is like a British secondary school, college means further education, a **sophomore** is a second-year college student and **graduate school** is where you study for further degrees, e.g. MA/MSc, after graduating for your first degree.

Unit 40

- 40.1**
- 1 union official 2 executive manager 3 director 4 unskilled worker 5 administrator
 - 6 safety officer (not the security officer – the person who makes sure everything is locked and secure, that there are no burglaries or other crimes, etc.)
 - 7 supervisor 8 labourer 9 personnel officer 10 public relations officer

40.3 *Suggested answers:*

- 1 This person's been **made redundant**.
- 2 He/She's **taken early retirement**.
- 3 This is a person who **works shifts** / is a **shift-worker**.
- 4 She's **been promoted**.
- 5 I got the sack (*or I was fired; or I was dismissed* – more formal).
- 6 He/She works **nine-to-five**. *or He/She has a nine-to-five job*.
- 7 You're a **workaholic**.

- 40.4**
- | | |
|--------------------------|--|
| 1 teacher | 4 actor/broadcaster/performer of some kind |
| 2 surgeon | 5 farmer |
| 3 secretary/typist/clerk | 6 tailor/dressmaker |

- 40.5**
- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 profession | 5 trade |
| 2 a difficult one; it could be called a trade, but many chefs may prefer to be thought of as 'professionals' | 6 trade (though could be called a profession) |
| 3 trade | 7 unskilled job |
| 4 profession | 8 same as 'dressmaker' |
| | 9 unskilled job |
| | 10 profession |

- 40.6**
- | | | | | |
|------------|----------|--------|-----------|-------------|
| 1 get/have | 2 living | 3 work | 4 offered | 5 take...on |
|------------|----------|--------|-----------|-------------|

Unit 41

41.1 *Probable answers:*

- 1 bowls (the bowls have a weight on one side which gives them a bias as they roll)
- 2 hang-gliding ('at the top' = at the top of the hill from which the hang-glider is launched)
- 3 motor-racing
- 4 riding (most people get a very sore seat/legs when they first try it)
- 5 windsurfing (being able to stay upright on the water)
- 6 snooker/pool/billiards/darts, but could, of course, apply to a number of other sports too (golf, shooting, etc.) (Snooker, pool and billiards are similar games but have different rules.)

41.3 *Equipment:* 1 arrows 2 shuttlecock 3 ball 4 ball 5 dartboard

Clothing:

- 1 Archers usually wear special gloves, and probably a cap to shade their eyes.
- 2 Usually sweat-shirt and shorts or tennis-skirt, with tennis-style shoes, possibly sweat-bands too.
- 3 Hockey-players usually wear shorts or a short tennis-skirt, but also protective gloves, shin-pads and possibly a safety-helmet.
- 4 Baseball players often wear caps, plus protective clothing (special gloves, shin-pads, etc.).
- 5 No special clothes, since the game is usually played informally in pubs and clubs.

41.4 1 broken 2 beaten/defeated 3 win 4 take up 5 holds 6 scored

41.5

1 a long jumper	4 a discus/javelin thrower	7 a footballer or a football player
2 a jockey	5 a gymnast	8 a pole-vaulter
3 a racing driver	6 a hockey player	

41.6

- 1 tennis, squash etc.
- 2 could be golf (golf-course) or horse-racing (racecourse)
- 3 usually boxing or wrestling
- 4 used for football, rugby and cricket
- 5 ice-skating
- 6 ten-pin bowling or skittles (a traditional British game similar to ten-pin but with only nine pins)
- 7 a track where you ski

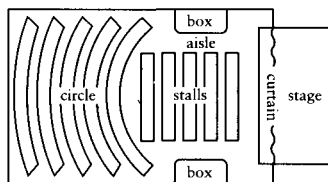
Unit 42

42.1 *Probable answers:*

- 1 Sculpture (The verb **stand** is often associated with statues; it could also be architecture, if 'Peace' is interpreted as the name of a building or huge monument.)
- 2 Cinema (Animated films are often associated with Walt Disney, e.g. the Mickey Mouse cartoons, but are also a serious art form.)
- 3 Dance (**Movement** and **rhythm** are the clues.)
- 4 Poetry (**Rhyme** – having the same sounds at the ends of consecutive lines – is often thought of as a necessary quality of good poetry.)
- 5 Painting (Oil-based and water-based paints are the two most popular types of paint used by artists.)
- 6 Architecture (We talk of the **design** of a building.)
- 7 Drama texts/plays in written form.
- 8 Perhaps a novel, but it could be any book divided into chapters, e.g. an academic textbook.
- 9 A play at the theatre (Plays are divided into **acts** – major divisions, and **scenes** – smaller divisions.)

- 42.2**
- 1 article (The arts relates to all the things in the network on the left-hand page.)
 - 2 no article (the subject in general)
 - 3 article (a particular performance)
 - 4 article (the technique/creative requirements)
 - 5 no article (modern poetry in general – all of it)
 - 6 no article (the speaker is talking about drawing and painting)
- 42.3**
- 1 What's the name of the **publisher** of that book you recommended? Was it Cambridge University Press? (An **editorial** is an article in a newspaper or magazine giving the opinions of the editor on matters of interest/concern.)
 - 2 'I wandered lonely as a cloud' is my favourite **line** of English poetry. (A **verse** is a collection of lines separated from the next verse by a space.)
 - 3 He's a very famous **sculptor**: he did that statue in the park, you know, the one with the soldiers. (**Sculpture** is the name of the art form; **sculptor** is the person who does it.)
 - 4 Most of the (short) stories in this collection are only five or six pages long. They're great for reading on short journeys. (A **novel** is a long work (usually more than 100 pages). Here **short story** or just **story** is clearly what the speaker is referring to.)
 - 5 There's an **exhibition** of ceramics at the museum next week. (**Exposition** is only used in very formal academic texts to talk about how an argument is presented. **Ceramics** as the name of the art form is always plural.)
 - 6 The sets are excellent in that new production of *Macbeth*, so dark and mysterious. (**Scenery** is uncountable and refers to natural beauty in the landscape, e.g. 'There's some wonderful scenery on the west coast of Ireland'. The attempt to represent a place on a theatre stage is called the set.)
 - 7 **What's on** at the Opera House next week? Anything interesting? (When we want to know what events are taking place, what a cinema is showing, etc., we use the question **what's on**? We also need a preposition for **opera house**; in this case, **at** is the best one.)
- 42.4** *Suitable questions:*
- 1 Was the play a success?
 - 2 Would you like a ticket for the Beethoven tonight?
 - 3 What's the architecture like in your home-town?
 - 4 Was it a good production?
 - 5 What are they showing at the Arts Cinema at the moment? or What's on at the cinema?

Follow-up:



Unit 43

43.1 *Possible groupings:*

Found in salads: cucumber green/red pepper lettuce radish

'Onion-family' vegetables: leek shallot garlic onion

Grow underground: potato carrot turnip

Usually long-shaped: aubergine courgette sweetcorn

There are, of course, other possible groups too.

- 43.2** 1 hot, spicy 3 salty 5 sugary, sickly 7 bland, tasteless
2 savoury 4 sour 6 bitter, strong

- 43.3** *starters:* pâté and toast prawn cocktail shrimps in garlic
main courses: chicken casserole Irish stew rump steak grilled trout
desserts: coffee gâteau fresh fruit salad sorbet chocolate fudge cake

- 43.4** 1 These chips are rather oily/greasy/fatty. 3 This meat is done to a turn.
2 This dish is overcooked. 4 This is just tasteless / very bland.

- 43.6** 1 *Fish:* sardines mackerel hake plaice trout cod sole whiting
Seafood: prawns squid oysters mussels crab lobster
2 calf – veal deer – venison sheep – lamb (young animal), mutton (older animal)
pig – pork, ham, bacon

Unit 44

- 44.1** 1 waterfall 4 peninsula 7 volcano 10 gorge
2 cliff 5 estuary 8 straits 11 summit or peak of a mountain
3 glacier 6 tributary 9 geyser 12 chain or mountains

- 44.2** Brazil is the fifth largest country in the world. In the north the densely forested basin of the River Amazon covers half the country. In the east the country is washed by the Atlantic. The highest mountain chain in South America, the Andes, does not lie in Brazil. Brazil's most famous city is Rio de Janeiro, the former capital. The capital of the Brazil of today is Brasilia.

- 44.3** 1 Mount Kilimanjaro
2 The Volga
3 Venezuela (The Angel Falls)
4 New Zealand
5



A delta is at the mouth of a river where the river divides and flows into the sea in a number of different channels. The River Nile has one.

- 6 The Straits of Gibraltar are at the western entrance to the Mediterranean and the Cape of Good Hope is at the southern tip of Africa.

- 44.4** *Possible answers:*

- | | | |
|------------------------|---------------|-------------------------|
| 1 Scotland | 5 flatter | 9 the Western Highlands |
| 2 country | 6 agriculture | 10 Ben Nevis |
| 3 the north of Britain | 7 Scotland | 11 Overfishing |
| 4 mountainous | 8 the Clyde | 12 Scotland |

- 44.5** 1 sandy beach/shore 3 shallow brook/bay 5 turbulent river/sea
2 steep gorge/hill 4 rocky coast/mountain 6 dangerous cliff/current

44.6 *Some possible answers:*

Spray cans destroy the ozone layer.

Organic farming means that fewer chemicals pollute the land – and our bodies.

Unleaded petrol causes less air pollution than leaded petrol.

Recycling paper means that fewer trees need to be cut down.

Using bottle banks means that glass is re-used rather than thrown away. There is, thus, less wastage of resources.

Environmentalists are also in favour of using solar or wind power, of using as little plastic as possible (because it is not bio-degradable) and of planting new trees instead of simply increasing the amount of land given over to agriculture.

Unit 45

- 45.1**
- 1 Cork is in the south of the Republic of Ireland.
 - 2 It lies on an island between two channels of the River Lee.
 - 3 It has a desperately complex one-way traffic system. Moreover, its buses are terribly crowded.
 - 4 St Anne's Church was built on a site where another church stood previously. That church was destroyed during a siege of the city.
 - 5 In the French Gothic style.
 - 6 Probably not as they do not cater specifically for tourists.
 - 7 The Crawford Gallery is worth visiting because it regularly puts on interesting exhibitions of modern art.
 - 8 Well-off people live in fashionable residential areas overlooking the harbour while others live in suburbs on the edge of the city.

45.2 *Some possible answers, based on the city of Cambridge in England:*

Cambridge has the second oldest university in England (after Oxford). The main tourist area of the town lies in the town centre, around the university colleges.

King's College Chapel is in the Perpendicular style.

Most of the main hotels in the town are within walking distance of the centre.

The town centre tends to be terribly crowded on Saturdays.

A number of the colleges are built on the site of former monasteries or convents.

Cambridge has been called the intellectual centre of the world. I am not sure whether or not it still merits this description.

There are plenty of sports facilities catering for both young and old.

Those who enjoy boating must not miss the opportunity to go for a punt on the River Cam.

Most of the more picturesque colleges overlook the River Cam.

An interesting new Science Park has been built on the outskirts of the town.

The Fitzwilliam Museum is well worth visiting

Kettle's Yard regularly mounts quite varied exhibitions.

Railway enthusiasts do not have to travel far from Cambridge to find a working steam railway open to the public.

Everyone who visits Cambridge is sure to appreciate its character.

- 45.4**
- | | | |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------|--|
| 1 natural history
science
folk | 3 art
music
community | 5 night
tennis
social |
| 2 leisure
shopping
city | 4 basket ball
squash
royal | 6 employment
accommodation
press |

45.7 *Some possible answers:*

The most picturesque parts of Cambridge are beside the river.
Cambridge is one of England's most historic towns.
The town could hardly be called spacious as most of its streets are very narrow.
Some of the eighteenth century buildings are particularly elegant.
The most magnificent building in the town, in my opinion, is the Pepys Library.
The town is at its most atmospheric on the day of a student graduation.
Tourists often find Cambridge's narrow lanes very quaint.
Cambridge is very lively at night because so many young people live there.
The city centre is quite hectic at weekends.
When the university is on vacation the town can suddenly seem quite deserted.
The market is particularly bustling on Saturdays.
The shops are always very crowded in the weeks before Christmas.
The shopping centre always seems to be packed with people.
We are lucky in that nowhere in the town is filthy; everywhere is quite clean.
Some of the suburbs have become quite run-down in recent years.
The old buildings in Cambridge are generally not allowed to become shabby but are kept in good repair.

Unit 46

- 46.1**
- 1 mammal
 - 2 crocodile
 - 3 poplar and birch are deciduous; the yew is evergreen
 - 4 pollen
 - 5 hedgehog, tortoise and bear
 - 6 s/he loves me, s/he loves me not
 - 7 cheetah
 - 8 dove
 - 9 rose, thistle, maple leaf and kiwi bird
 - 10 breathing
 - 11 An endangered species is any species which is in danger of dying out or becoming extinct, e.g. some breeds of tiger or whale.
 - 12 The dinosaur is extinct; the emu is still in existence and the phoenix was a mythical creature not a real one.
 - 13 snowdrop, daisy and lily of the valley; parrot, pigeon and seagull.
 - 14 Your answer to this question depends, of course, on where you come from.

46.2 *Possible answers:*

prickly hedgehog flowing mane sweet-smelling petals noble eagle
sturdy oak graceful willow wriggly worm rough bark

- 46.3**
- | | | | |
|---------------------|---------------|----------|---------------|
| 1 roots | 4 thrive/grow | 7 bud | 10 bat; fish |
| 2 claws; trunk/bark | 5 hoof | 8 thorns | 11 bee; snail |
| 3 blossom/flower | 6 stalks | 9 twigs | 12 harvested |

Notice how people are compared to animals in sentences 10 and 11. This is quite common.

46.4 The words underlined below are worth learning. You can use them when talking about other animals too.

camel A mammal of the family, Camelidae, (2 species): the Bactrian, from cold deserts in Central Asia and domesticated elsewhere, and the dromedary; eats any vegetation; drinks salt water if necessary; closes slit-like nostrils to exclude sand; humps are stores of energy-rich fats. The two species may interbreed: the offspring has one hump; the males are usually sterile while the females are fertile.

- 46.5** The description of an elephant from the same encyclopaedia is given below. While it is unlikely that you would need or want to write anything quite so technical, look at it carefully and pick out any vocabulary from it that could also be useful for you to learn.

elephant A large mammal of the family, Elephantidae; almost naked grey skin; massive forehead; small eyes; upper incisor teeth form 'tusks'; snout elongated as a muscular, grasping 'trunk'; ears large and movable (used to radiate heat). There are two living species. The African elephant is the largest living land animal, with three sub-species. The Asian elephant has four sub-species. The African is larger with larger ears, a triangular tip on the top and bottom of the trunk tip (not just on the top) and obvious tusks in the female.

If you chose to write about another animal, compare your description if possible with one in an English-language encyclopaedia. If not ask a teacher to correct your work.

Unit 47

- 47.1** 1 heel; soles 3 dressing-gown 5 belt
2 laces 4 slippers 6 hem; buttons
- 47.2** 1 pyjamas 3 shorts 5 pair (of tights)
2 jeans 4 pairs of pants 6 tights (or new ones)
- 47.3** 1 silk evening blouse 3 leather boots 5 velvet ribbon
2 cashmere sweater 4 corduroy trousers 6 cotton T-shirt

47.4 *Possible answers:*

The man is wearing baggy corduroy trousers with a shabby sweater. The collar of a tartan shirt is visible. He has lace-up shoes and one of the laces is undone. He has a pair of mitts on and a flat cap.

The woman is wearing a round-neck close-fitting spotted long-sleeved blouse with plain cuffs and a knee-length striped skirt. She has high-heeled shoes on and is carrying a large handbag and some gloves.

- 47.5** 1 fits 2 matches 3 suits

Unit 48

- 48.1** 1 flu – headache, aching muscles, fever, cough, sneezing
2 pneumonia – dry cough, high fever, chest pain, rapid breathing
3 rheumatism – swollen, painful joints, stiffness, limited movement
4 chickenpox – rash starting on body, slightly raised temperature
5 mumps – swollen glands in front of ear, earache or pain on eating
6 an ulcer – burning pain in abdomen, pain or nausea after eating
- 48.2** 1 For measuring temperature. 3 For measuring people.
2 For weighing people. 4 For doing operations.
- 48.3** 1 c 2 g 3 e 4 a 5 b 6 f 7 h 8 d

48.4

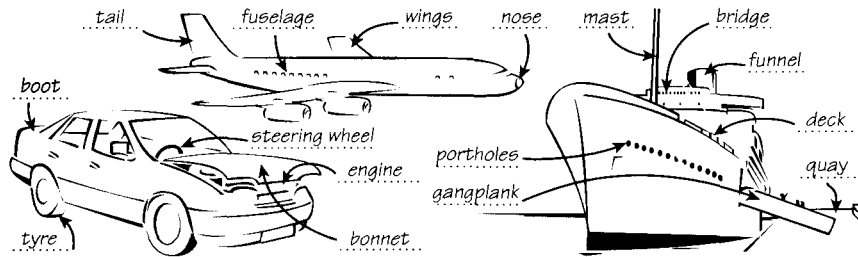
<i>noun</i>	<i>adjective</i>	<i>verb</i>
breathlessness, breath	breathless	breathe
faint	faint	faint
shiver, shivering	shivery	shiver
dislocation	dislocated	dislocate
ache	aching	ache
treatment	–	treat
swelling	swollen	swell

48.5 Possible answers:

- | | | | |
|---------------|----------------|------------------|-----------------|
| 1 blisters | 4 bruises | 7 a rash | 10 an itch |
| 2 indigestion | 5 a broken leg | 8 breathlessness | 11 a cold |
| 3 lung cancer | 6 sunburn | 9 sickness | 12 hypochondria |

Unit 49

49.1



49.2

bonnet – part of car
 balloon, glider – types of air transport
 deck-chair – facilities used by ship's passenger
 guard's van – part of train
 mast, anchor, oar, rudder – part of boat (**rudder** can also be part of a plane)
 petrol pump, dual carriageway – facilities used by road travellers
 bus driver – person working in road transport
 left luggage lockers – facilities used by rail or air travellers
 check-in desk, control tower – facilities associated with air travel
 canoe – type of boat

49.3

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 There are roadworks ahead. | 4 The road ahead has an uneven surface. |
| 2 There's a cross-roads ahead. | 5 There is a crossing point for the elderly ahead. |
| 3 There may be low-flying aircraft overhead. | |

49.4

- | | | | |
|----------|--------------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1 flight | 5 mechanic | 9 delayed | 13 passengers |
| 2 boot | 6 run out | 10 train | 14 galleys |
| 3 bonnet | 7 check | 11 ferry | |
| 4 garage | 8 departure lounge | 12 deckchair | |

49.5

Type of transport	advantages	disadvantages
road	takes you door to door; easy with luggage	tiring for driver; slow for long distances
train	can enjoy scenery; can work on train	poor catering; frequent delays
sea	can move around; fresh sea air	slow; can feel seasick
air	quick; convenient	cramped; difficult to get to airports

Unit 50

50.1 Possible advantages and disadvantages:

place	advantage	disadvantage
camp-site	cheap	uncomfortable
self-catering flat	free to eat when you want	hard work
guest-house	meals cooked for you	not so free perhaps
youth hostel	cheap	no privacy
holiday camp	lots to do	noisy
time-share apartment	can be attractive accommodation	same place every year

- 50.3**
- 1 They canoed in the Dordogne last year.
 - 2 Have you ever windsurfed?
 - 3 I love sailing.
 - 4 He spends too much time going fishing.
 - 5 It's quite expensive to go shopping in Rome.
 - 6 I enjoy going cycling at weekends.

50.4 Possible answers:

- 1 Can I book a double room with a cot, please?
- 2 Could I have a call at 6 a.m., please?
- 3 The television in my room isn't working. Could you send someone up, please?
- 4 Am I too late to get something to eat?
- 5 Can I have breakfast in my room, please?
- 6 Is service included?

50.5

The Smiths stayed at a ^(campsite) camping last summer because all other kinds of holiday ^(sunbathed or went sunbathing) accommodations are too expensive for them. Every day Mrs Smith had a sunbath, Mr ^(went sightseeing) Smith made a sight-seeing and the children ^(made journeys or travelled) made a travel around the island. One day ^(went on an excursion) they made an excursion to a local castle.

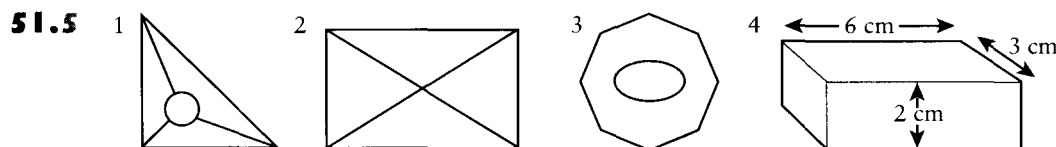
Unit 51

- 51.1**
- 1, 3, 5, 7
 - 2, 4, 6, 8
 - 1, 2, 3, 5
 - 10.6 (ten point six)
 - $\frac{3}{8}$ (three eighths)
 - e equals $m c$ squared; it is Einstein's relativity equation in which e = energy, m = mass and c = the speed of light.
 - two pi r ; this is the formula for the circumference of a circle when r = the radius of the circle. π is the mathematical symbol for 3.14159...

- 51.2**
- Two per cent of the British population owned ninety per cent of the country's wealth in nineteen ninety two.
 - Nought degrees Centigrade equals thirty-two degrees Fahrenheit.
 - Sixty-two point three per cent of adults have false teeth.
 - Two thirds plus one quarter times four squared, equals fourteen and two thirds.
 - Two million, seven hundred and sixty nine thousand, four hundred and twenty five people live here.

- 51.3**
- | | | | | | | |
|-----------|----------|-------------|-----------|------------|------------|-----------|
| square | circular | rectangular | oval | triangular | pentagonal | octagonal |
| spherical | cubic | spiral | pyramidal | | | |

- 51.4**
- forty six point six per cent
 - thirty three billion, nine hundred and twenty three thousand, three hundred and ten million kilometres
 - nine hundred and seventy nine metres
 - one thousand eight hundred and ninety two cups
 - one hundred and seventy three metres or five hundred and sixty eight feet high
 - twenty three thousand two hundred and fifty umbrellas; nineteen eighty seven to nineteen eighty eight
 - seven hundred and thirty three telephones per thousand population
 - nought point four square kilometres



Unit 52

52.1

<i>science</i>	<i>scientist</i>
chemistry	chemist
physics	physicist
zoology	zoologist
genetics	geneticist
information technology	information technologist
cybernetics	cyberneticist
civil engineering	civil engineer

Note: a **physician** is a doctor. Check in the index for the pronunciation of these words as they are frequently mispronounced.

- 52.2**
- 1 video recorder – a machine which records and plays back sound and pictures
 - 2 photocopier – a machine which makes copies of documents
 - 3 fax machine – a machine which makes copies of documents and sends them down telephone lines to another place
 - 4 tape recorder – a machine which records and plays back sound
 - 5 modem – a piece of equipment allowing you to send information from one computer down telephone lines to another computer
 - 6 camcorder – a camera which records moving pictures and sound
 - 7 robot – a machine which acts like a person
 - 8 word-processor – a kind of sophisticated typewriter using a computer
 - 9 food-processor – a machine for chopping up, slicing, mashing, blending, etc.

52.3 *Some possible definitions:*

- 1 VDU stands for **visual display unit** and it is the part of the computer which includes the screen or monitor, on which you look at your work as you do it.
- 2 A **stapler** is a useful piece of office equipment which allows you to join two or more pieces of paper together by bending a small bit of wire, called a staple, through the pages which you want to connect.
- 3 A **cordless iron** is an iron which gets its power from a base unit on which it stands when not in use. It is not connected to the base unit by a flex and so can be used freely and easily.
- 4 An **alarm clock** is useful for waking you up in the morning.
- 5 A **hole punch** is a useful piece of office equipment which allows you to make holes in sheets of paper so that they can then be inserted into a file.

- 52.4**
- | | | | | |
|-------------|--------------|------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1 discovery | 3 rotation | 5 patent | 7 dissection | 9 combination |
| 2 invention | 4 conclusion | 6 analysis | 8 experiment | |

- 52.6** *Time and Newsweek* often have articles on general scientific interest as does the newspaper, *The Times*.

Unit 53

- 53.1**
- | | | |
|------------------------|--------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1 detective story/film | 3 sports programme | 5 current affairs programme |
| 2 documentary | 4 game show | 6 drama |

- 53.3**
- 1 A **foreign correspondent** is a journalist based abroad.
 - 2 A **sub-editor** is someone who works in a newspaper office and decides on how the pages should be laid out, how stories need to be cut, what headlines should be used and so on.
 - 3 A **continuity person** is responsible for seeing that the continuity between one scene and another in a film is correct – for making sure that people do not suddenly wear different earrings, for example.
 - 4 An **editor** is the person responsible for the production of a newspaper or magazine.
 - 5 A **librarian** is a person who works in a place which lends books.
 - 6 A **bookseller** is someone who owns or works in a shop which sells books.
 - 7 A **publisher** is a person or company responsible for having a book printed and organising its sale.
 - 8 A **columnist** is a journalist who writes a regular column or feature for a newspaper/magazine.
 - 9 A **camera operator** is the person who operates a camera filming a TV programme or a film.
 - 10 A **critic** is a person who writes reviews of books, films or theatre plays.

- 53.4**
- | | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------|----------|
| 1 buttons; remote control | 3 pick up / receive | 5 comics |
| 2 broadcasts/programmes | 4 camcorder | |

Unit 54

54.1 1 independence 2 bye-election 3 running 4 elected 5 policy 6 statesman

54.2 1 chambers 3 constituency 5 Prime Minister
2 MPs (Members of Parliament) 4 majority 6 election

54.3

<i>abstract noun</i>	<i>person-noun</i>	<i>verb</i>	<i>adjective</i>
revolution	revolutionary	revolutionise	revolutionary
representation	representative	represent	representative
election	elector	elect	elective
dictatorship	dictator	dictate	dictatorial
presidency	president	preside	presidential

54.4 1 UK Sweden Belgium
2 Iceland
8 Member of Parliament; Prime Minister; United Nations; European Union; North Atlantic Treaty Organisation; Organisation of Petroleum Exporting Countries
(You will find more work on abbreviations in Unit 98.)

Unit 55

55.1 1 robbed; stole 2 was stolen 3 are robbed 4 was robbed

55.2

<i>crime</i>	<i>criminal</i>	<i>verb</i>	<i>definition</i>
terrorism	terrorist	terrorise, commit acts of terrorism (the verb to terrorise is used more generally than in the criminal sense, e.g. The wild dogs terrorised the neighbourhood.)	using violence for political ends
blackmail	blackmailer	blackmail	threatening to make a dark secret public in order to get money
drug-trafficking	drug-trafficker	to traffic in drugs, to peddle drugs, to deal in drugs	buying and selling drugs
forgery	forgery	forge	to try to pass off a copy as the real thing
assault	attacker, assailant	assault	physical attack on another person
pickpocketing	pickpocket	pickpocket	stealing from someone's pocket or handbag
mugging	mugger	mug	attacking someone, often on the street, generally to get money

55.3 1 was convicted 2 defended 3 sentenced 4 be released 5 was acquitted

55.4 Possible groupings:

Crimes: theft hi-jacking smuggling bribery drunken driving rape

Punishments: prison flogging death penalty probation community service fine

People connected with the law: witness detective traffic warden lawyer judge
members of a jury

Unit 56

- 56.1**
- 1 Japan – yen; Australia – dollar; India – rupee; Russia – rouble.
 - 2 It is any currency which is reliable and stable.
 - 3 American Express and Visa.
 - 4 Alcohol and tobacco.
 - 5 Rents from property; winnings from gambling; interest from investments.
 - 6 It is an index used for calculating the value of shares on the Stock Exchange in New York. The FT (or Footsie) Index in London and the Nikkei in Japan.
 - 7 An ancient Greek vase in perfect condition is priceless and an old biro that doesn't work is valueless.
- 56.2**
- 1 interest – money chargeable on a loan
 - 2 mortgage – a loan to purchase property
 - 3 an overdrawn account – a bank account with minus money in it
 - 4 savings account – an account that is used mainly for keeping money
 - 5 current account – an account that cheques are drawn on for day-to-day use
 - 6 pension – money paid to people after a certain age
 - 7 disability allowance – money paid to people with a handicap
 - 8 child benefit – money paid towards the cost of raising a family
 - 9 grant – money given by the government for education, welfare, etc.
- 56.3**
- The only two headlines that most people would be pleased to see are 'Interest rates down' and 'VAT to be reduced'.
- 56.4**
- | | | | | |
|-------------------|--------|---------|----------|----------|
| 1 inheritance tax | 2 loan | 3 black | 4 rebate | 5 refund |
|-------------------|--------|---------|----------|----------|

Unit 57

57.1 *Suggested answers:*

- 1 That's a vast amount of money to be wasted like that!
2 That's a considerable number of people.
3 It seems it'll be about average again this year, then.
4 At least that's only a small amount of money.
5 You've wasted a huge amount of time.

- 57.2** *small*: miniscule minute meagre insignificant
large: gigantic overwhelming excessive sizeable

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------|
| 1 minute/miniscule | 4 sizeable |
| 2 overwhelming/excessive/gigantic | 5 excessive |
| 3 a(n) excessive/gigantic | |

- 57.3** 1 a lot of (this gives a rather negative feel; lots of would sound too positive)
2 plenty of / lots of (a positive quantity)
3 much / a lot
4 a good / great deal of / a lot of
5 Many / A lot of (**Many** and **much** are sometimes used in affirmatives, but they do have a somewhat formal feel about them used in that way; the general rule of thumb is not to use **much** and **many** in simple affirmatives.)

57.4 Possible answers:

- 1 quite shocked / extremely anxious
- 2 slightly anxious / a bit surprised
- 3 rather/quite/totally confused
- 4 quite surprised
- 5 a bit / rather sad
- 6 absolutely/utterly/completely exhausted / extremely tired

57.5 Possible sentences:

- 1 There are dozens of empty jam-jars in this cupboard. What shall I do with them?
- 2 He's got heaps of money; he can pay for himself.
- 3 There's tons of rubbish in the garden; it'll take us months to clear it all.
- 4 I only ever take a tiny drop of milk in my tea, thank you.

Unit 58

58.1 1 period 2 age (era could also be used) 3 era 4 time 5 spell

58.2 Possible answers:

- 1 I've told you time and time again not to leave that fridge door open!
- 2 Hello! Nice to see you! You're just in time for tea/coffee!
- 3 By the time you get this card, I'll probably already be at your house.
- 4 I'd rather talk to you one at a time, if you don't mind.
- 5 Could you use the old photocopier for the time being? The new one's being repaired.
- 6 It can get extremely cold at times in...
- 7 I'll do my best to get there on time.

58.3 Possible answers:

- 1 ...takes about three hours.
- 2 ...run/last for about half an hour each side.
- 3 ...lasted me three winters.
- 4 ...went on for ages.
- 5 ...have elapsed/passed since then, but people still remember that day.
- 6 ...pass quickly.
- 7 ...take your time.

58.4 1 Yes, she's permanent now. 4 Yes, I believe it's eternal.
2 Yes, absolutely timeless. 5 It's a temporary measure.
3 Well, provisionally.

Unit 59

59.1 1 ...them shortened? 3 ...a short cut. 5 ...widened it /... 've widened it.
2 ...extremely tall. 4 ...height. 6 ...heighten the feeling.

59.2 1 a width of the pool 3 a very narrow range of goods 5 shallow water
2 to lengthen 4 a long-distance call 6 faraway/distant places

59.3 1 it's much bigger now. 3 to give us more room. 5 you should broaden it.
2 it's a lengthy business. 4 there's a wide range. 6 for miles along the river.

59.4 1 at; of 2 in 3 from (or possibly at) 4 from; to

59.5 1 spread 2 expanded/grew; contracted 3 shrunk 4 stretches 5 grown

Unit 60

- 60.1**
- 1 ...was obliged/forced to close down / had to close down / had no choice/alternative but to close down.
 - 2 ...it's optional.
 - 3 ...have to / 'll have to pay a deposit.
 - 4 ...no choice/alternative, otherwise we'll go/be bankrupt.
 - 5 ...must / ought to / should take it to the cleaners.
 - 6 ...forced him to hand it over.
 - 7 ...mandatory (or perhaps **obligatory**) for dangerous driving.
 - 8 ...compulsory/obligatory in all secondary schools.
 - 9 ...needn't have bought us a present / didn't have to buy us a present / shouldn't have bought us a present.
 - 10 ... exempt from military service / not obliged to do military service.

60.2 *Possible answers:*

- 2 Most people usually suffer from a lack of time or of money.
- 3 Filling out a tax return is obligatory once a year in many countries.
- 4 Most people feel they are in need of more time and money, and millions of people in the world are in need of food and a decent home.
- 5 Death is certainly inevitable for all of us.
- 6 If you are an adult you probably no longer have to go to school or wear nappies!
- 7 When I was at school, sport, maths, English and French were compulsory.

60.3 *Suggested answers:*

	<i>highly</i>	<i>quite</i>	<i>very</i>	<i>absolutely</i>
possible	x	✓	✓	x
impossible	x	✓	x	✓
probable	✓	✓	✓	x
(un)likely	✓	✓	✓	x
inevitable	x	x	x	✓
certain	x	✓	x	✓

60.4 *Suggested answers:*

- 1 A videophone in every home is quite possible by 2025.
- 2 Rain in the Amazon forest within eight days is highly likely!
- 3 A human being living to 250 is absolutely impossible.
- 4 We'll all be dead by 2250: absolutely inevitable.
- 5 A flying saucer in Hong Kong is highly unlikely.
- 6 An opportunity to meet the US President is highly unlikely for most people but quite possible for some.
- 7 A third world war? Very possible if we continue to build nuclear weapons.

Unit 61

- 61.1**
- 1 racket would be an ideal word here
 - 2 sound, since it is obviously pleasant
 - 3 noises if you mean different sounds, but noise is also possible here if you interpret 'some' to mean not a plural number, but *one* sound of 'a certain, unidentifiable type', e.g. 'Some animal must have come into the garden last night; look at these footprints.' (it's not clear what sort of animal)
 - 4 din or racket; din is often used for discordant music
 - 5 noise is the only word in the group that can be used uncountably (without *a*)

61.2 *Suggested words:*

1 hiss 2 clatter or crash 3 rustle 4 thud 5 bang 6 roar 7 rumble

61.3

<i>verb/noun</i>	<i>typical source(s) of the sound</i>
hum	an electrical appliance when switched on, e.g. computer, freezer, record player
rattle	small stones in a tin being shaken
bleep	the alarm on a battery-driven clock
screech	a car's tyres when the brakes are applied very suddenly or when the car drives off with extremely high acceleration
chime	an old-fashioned pendulum clock or a big public clock on a building when they are sounding the hour or quarter-hour

- 61.4** 1 It was a police officer holding a flashlamp. 3 Then it died, leaving us in complete darkness.
 2 I'd never seen such a beautiful bracelet. 4 It was clearly time to get up and move out.

- 61.5** 1 a 2 c 3 b

Unit 62**62.1** *Suggested questions:*

- Do you rent this house?
- Could I possibly borrow your camera? / Would you lend me your camera?
- Which room have I been allocated?
- Does the school provide exercise books and things?
- Would you like to contribute to our collection for the disabled?
- What sort of property do you have / live in / own?
- Is it possible to hire a room for a meeting?

- 62.2** 1 The millionaire donated a swimming pool to the school.
 2 The Director was allocated the best parking-place.
 3 My mother's cousin left me £5,000 in her will.
 4 A farmer nearby provided us with logs for the fire.
 5 When I retired they presented me with a camcorder.
 6 The restaurant catered for vegetarians.

- 62.3** 1 handed down 2 give out 3 let go of 4 gave...away 5 hand over

- 62.4** 1 your wallet/handbag/money 4 hand-out/tests
 2 jewellery/furniture 5 an antique / a set of books
 3 a book / a picture of someone

- 62.5** 1 properties 4 tenants 7 borrowed 10 belongings/possessions
 2 loans 5 owner/proprietor 8 properties
 3 landlords 6 estate 9 possessions

Unit 63

63.1 Possible first sentences:

- 1 That big tree was swaying back and forth in the wind.
- 2 The cruise-liner is leaving tomorrow.
- 3 The most famous river in France is the Seine.
- 4 A cat ran out in front of the car.
- 5 A train was derailed near London yesterday.

- 63.2**
- 1 a person dancing; a person who is drunk trying to walk may sway from side to side; a boat or a bus can also sway from side to side.
 - 2 an insect crawls; a baby does too before it can walk; there is a fast over-arm swimming style called 'crawl'.
 - 3 anything moving extremely fast, e.g. a bird or animal can shoot by, a plane can shoot overhead, a fish can shoot through the water.
 - 4 a bird's or butterfly's wings; a piece of washing on the line in the wind; a person's eyelashes; a curtain in the wind.
 - 5 anything moving slowly on water, e.g. a boat, a piece of wood; a person can drift through life (moving without any sense of purpose or direction); your thoughts can drift to something or someone (it happens unintentionally).

- 63.3** 1 rate 2 pace 3 velocity 4 speed

63.4 Possible answers:

	<i>usage</i>	<i>grammar</i>
quick	something that takes a short time, e.g. quick snack; quick loo visit	adjective only; can be used with 'to', e.g. she was quick to respond
rapid	more formal; used for things like 'rapid economic growth'; 'rapid increase/decline'	adjective only
swift	more restricted generally; used for things like 'swift-flowing stream'; swift response/decision/ reaction	adjective only; can be used with 'in', e.g. 'He was swift in pointing out how wrong I was.'

63.5 Possible situations:

- 1 If you are very late for something.
- 2 If you *want* to be late for something, e.g. something unpleasant.
- 3 If you aren't in a hurry. You can also say this about your studies, if you are not going either particularly fast or slow.
- 4 If you were hiding from someone, e.g. under a bed or behind a door.
- 5 If you really don't want to meet them or talk to them, or don't want them to see you.

- 63.6**
- 1 A **slowcoach** is a person who does everything too slowly, who takes an unacceptably long time to do things.
 - 2 A **streaker** is someone who takes off all their clothes in a public place and runs naked in front of everyone.
 - 3 A **plodder** is a person who sticks at a task and completes it slowly and usually with great effort and difficulty, no matter how long it takes.
 - 4 A **stirrer** is a person who deliberately 'stirs up' or causes trouble between people by saying things that set them against one another.

Unit 64

64.1 *Suggested answers:*

- | | | | |
|----------------|----------------|-------------------|------------|
| 1 glossy | 4 prickly | 7 jagged | 10 gnarled |
| 2 downy/fluffy | 5 rough/coarse | 8 coarse | |
| 3 slippery | 6 fluffy | 9 polished/smooth | |

Things you might find in your house:

- 1 a pair of silk stockings; the metal surface of a hi-fi or television
- 2 a heavy-duty carpet; a garden path
- 3 a highly-varnished table-top; a mirror; a brass object
- 4 a cat or dog; a pet rabbit; a fur coat
- 5 bed-linen; the surface of a table

- 64.2**
- 1 This is about average for a baby.
 - 2 A 20-stone person is a huge, probably very overweight person.
 - 3 8 ounces is half a pound, i.e. 227 grams. It's enough for many people; is it enough for you?
 - 4 The person writing this weighs 11st 7lb.

64.3 *Possible answers:*

- 1 a big cat such as a panther or leopard
- 2 a fish; an eel
- 3 a hedgehog; a porcupine
- 4 a bear; a panda
- 5 a baby chick or duckling; the new-born of many animals

64.4

P	SHADY	D	S	C	D
O	U	E	H	O	A
O U N C E	L	N	V I V I D	A	Z
N	L	S P A R S E	N	R O U G H	Z
D		E	Y	S	G L A R E
				E	E

Possible pair-puzzles:

H
C U M B E R S O M E
A
V
Y

H ——— VY
 (EA)
L ——— D

L
I
G
F E A T H E R
T

Unit 65

- 65.1** 1 reached/secured 3 reach/attain/achieve 5 realise/fulfill 7 come
2 fulfilled 4 attain/realise/fulfill 6 reach/achieve

65.2

<i>verb</i>	<i>noun</i>	<i>adjective</i>	<i>adverb</i>
realise	realisation	realisable	–
–	difficulty	difficult	–
target	target	targeted	–
–	ambition	ambitious	ambitiously
fail	failure	failed	–
trouble	trouble	troubling troublesome troubled	–

Comments:

targeted is used in sentences such as 'The government has decided to give the extra funds to targeted groups in society.' (specifically chosen)

difficult has no adverb in English; we say 'We did it **with difficulty**'.

troubling: We have seen some very **troubling** developments recently. (worrying)

troublesome: They are a **troublesome** group of students. (cause trouble)

troubled: I've been feeling rather **troubled** lately about my daughter. (worried with problems)

unfailingly: 'failingly' doesn't exist, but unfailingly does, e.g. She is unfailingly honest; you can trust her completely.

failed: They have made three failed attempts to save the company.

- 65.3** 1 I find it very difficult to understand English idioms.
2 She succeeded in **rising** to the top in her profession.
3 Do you ever have any trouble **using** this photocopier? I always seem to.
4 I've **managed** to work quite hard this last month. (accomplish usually has a direct object, e.g. 'I've accomplished a lot this month.')
5 I'm amazed that you can cope **with** all the work they give you.

65.4 Possible answers:

- 2 I'd get it seen to / repaired.
3 It would probably fold eventually.
4 The marker(s) might take the overall performance into account and ignore the one bad result.
5 Perhaps try again, or abandon it.
6 Perhaps give up, or ask for help and advice from my teacher.

65.5 Possible answers:

- 1 Someone is finding their housework / family responsibilities impossible to manage.
2 Perhaps someone who invested £5,000 and lost it all.
3 It could be about a business someone started, or about a project, or something they were building!
4 Talking about someone's success, e.g. in getting a job / in sport; **pull it off** means to succeed, to win, when it is difficult or people are not expecting you to succeed.

Unit 66

66.1

2 bottles/cartons of milk
4 cans of coke
a tin of condensed milk
a packet/box of chocolate biscuits
a packet of cigarettes
a large box of matches
a jar of honey
6 packets of crisps

66.2

- 1 tub, pot
- 2 barrel, bottles, sack (of potatoes)
- 3 cans, bottles, barrels, packs, crates, cases
- 4 *any of these*: bottle/carton (of milk), jug (of milk), mug (of tea), packet (of cornflakes), jar (of marmalade), glass (of milk), bowl (of sugar, for cornflakes)
- 5 sack (or perhaps a bag)
- 6 bag and basket
- 7 (a) 200 (b) 20

66.3

- | | | |
|------------------------------|---------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1 a jar of peanut butter | 5 a tin of sardines | 9 a packet of butter |
| 2 a packet of washing powder | 6 a tin of tomatoes | 10 a pack of 12 cans of beer |
| 3 a carton of cream | 7 a bag of apples | 11 a bottle of washing-up liquid |
| 4 a tube of skin cream | 8 a box of tissues | |

66.4

- | | | |
|------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------|
| 1 chocolate/tool/match | 3 carrier/shopping/mail | 5 wine whisky hour |
| 2 wine/milk/water | 4 milk/cream/water | 6 flower/tea/coffee |

Unit 67

67.1

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 I have strong views on marriage. | 5 This is absurd from our point of view. |
| 2 Most people believe in life after death. | 6 He's quite wrong in my opinion. |
| 3 I was in favour of the proposed changes. | 7 Well, that's just silly, to my mind. |
| 4 What does she think of the new teacher? | |

67.2

Possible answers:

- | | | |
|---------------|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1 eccentric | 3 moderate/middle-of-the-road | 5 conservative/traditional |
| 2 firm/strong | 4 fanatical/obsessive | |

67.3

- 1 I've always doubted that ghosts exist.
- 2 I have always held that people should rely on themselves more.
- 3 Claudia maintains that the teacher has been unfair to her.
- 4 I was convinced (that) I had been in that room before.
- 5 He feels we should have tried again.

Unit 68

68.1

<i>adjective</i>	<i>abstract noun</i>	<i>adjective</i>	<i>abstract noun</i>
furious	fury	frustrated	frustration
anxious	anxiety	cheerful	cheerfulness
grateful	gratitude	enthusiastic	enthusiasm
ecstatic	ecstasy	apprehensive	apprehension
inspired	inspiration	excited	excitement

- 68.2** 1 confused 3 frustrated 5 enthusiastic 7 fed-up 9 thrilled
2 depressed 4 discontented 6 cross 8 upset

68.3 Possible answers:

- I felt anxious until we heard the results of my mother's medical tests.
- I felt slightly apprehensive before my first trip to China.
- I was very grateful to him for lending me his car.
- I was in a terrible rage when I heard about the unkind things the teacher had said to my best friend.
- I was miserable for days when I broke up with my boyfriend.
- I was so inspired by the book, *The Story of San Michele*, that I decided I would become a doctor too.
- I was initially very enthusiastic about skating but I soon lost interest.

- 68.4** 1 exciting 2 inspired 3 depressing 4 frustrating 5 confused

- 68.5** 1 I'm hot 2 I'm thirsty 3 I'm cross 4 I'm cold 5 I'm hungry 6 I'm tired

Unit 69

69.1

<i>verb</i>	<i>noun</i>	<i>adjective</i>	<i>adverb</i>
–	passion	passionate	passionately
tempt	temptation	tempting	temptingly
attract	attraction	attractive	attractively
appeal	appeal	appealing	appealingly
disgust	disgust	disgusting	disgustingly
hate	hatred	hateful	hatefully
repel	repulsion	repulsive/ repellent	repulsively
–	affection	affectionate	affectionately
adore	adoration	adoring	adoringly

- 69.2** 1 women 2 birds 3 spiders 4 steal 5 pain 6 the future

- 69.3** 1 I can't stand jazz. 5 She has totally captivated him.
2 Beer revolts me. 6 Would you like a pizza tonight?
3 I'm not really keen on tea. 7 She is keen on rowing and golf.
4 His art appeals to me. 8 I'm not looking forward to the exam.

- 69.4** 1 b 2 a 3 b 4 a 5 a

69.5 *Suggested answers:*

- 1 I like all fruit and I adore curry but I can't stand tripe.
- 2 the holidays
- 3 language
- 4 Their eyes, probably.
- 5 I enjoy meeting people from all over the world.
- 6 A chocolate ice-cream.
- 7 Arrogance and a negative attitude to life.
- 8 Losing my health.
- 9 I rather fancy going to the theatre.

Unit 70**70.1** *Possible answers:*

- | | | | |
|-------------|--------------|-----------------------|--------------|
| 1 confessed | 3 shrieked | 5 stammered/stuttered | 7 complained |
| 2 boasted | 4 threatened | 6 begged | 8 urged |

- 70.2**
- 1 He confessed to breaking the vase (*or* that he had broken...).
 - 2 The little boy boasted of being the cleverest person in the class (*or* that he was...).
 - 3 She shrieked that there was a mouse over there.
 - 4 She threatened to stop my pocket money if I did not behave.
 - 5 He stammered/stuttered that he had done it.
 - 6 He begged me to help him.
 - 7 She complained that the hotel was filthy.
 - 8 He urged Jim to try harder.

70.3

<i>adverb</i>	<i>adjective</i>	<i>noun</i>	<i>adverb</i>	<i>adjective</i>	<i>noun</i>
angrily	angry	anger	cheerfully	cheerful	cheerfulness
furiously	furious	fury	gratefully	grateful	gratitude
bitterly	bitter	bitterness	anxiously	anxious	anxiety
miserably	miserable	misery			

- 70.4**
- | | | |
|---------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 1 a threat | 3 an objection | 5 insistent |
| 2 a complaint | 4 a beggar | 6 argumentative |

- 70.5**
- 1 urged/begged
 - 2 a) to b) on c) about/of
 - 3 threatened
 - 4 all except **urge** and **beg**
 - 5 complain – grumble; maintain – declare; confess – admit; urge – encourage; beg – plead; grumble – moan.

70.6 *Possible answers:*

- 1 'We can easily break into the bank,' she said **boldly**.
- 2 'Thank you so much,' he said **gratefully**.
- 3 'I wish you'd get a move on,' he said **impatiently**.
- 4 'I love you so much,' she said **passionately**.
- 5 'I'll do it if you really want me to,' he said **reluctantly**.
- 6 'I don't know anyone here,' she said **shyly**.
- 7 'Of course, I believe you,' he said **sincerely**.

Unit 71

71.1 *Some possible answers:*

- | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1 That smells wonderful. | 5 I feel great. |
| 2 Your hair looks great. | 6 That sounds fantastic. |
| 3 It sounds brilliant. | 7 You look upset. What's the matter? |
| 4 This tastes delicious. | 8 He smells disgusting. |

71.2 1 witness 2 peer 3 observe 4 glance 5 stare

71.3 1 witnessed 3 grasped 5 stroked 7 grabbed/snatched 2 gazed/stared 4 press 6 observed 8 glanced

71.4 1 bitter 2 sweet 3 hot 4 sour 5 spicy 6 salty

71.5 1 snatch/grab 2 finger 3 handle 4 paw

71.6 *Possible answers:*

- | | | |
|------------|-----------------|------------------|
| 1 aromatic | 3 evil-smelling | 5 sweet-smelling |
| 2 smelly | 4 fragrant | 6 scented |

71.7 1 UFOs 2 telepathy 3 ghosts 4 intuition 5 déjà-vu 6 premonition

71.8 *Possible answers:*

- 1 *sight*: I climbed up to the top of a mountain and was above the level of some low clouds. I could not see the ground but could see the tops of half a dozen other mountains rising out of the clouds.
- 2 *hearing*: I heard my newborn baby crying for the first time.
- 3 *taste*: I tasted some wonderful soup after a long day's walking in the hills.
- 4 *smell*: I shall always remember smelling the sea after a long time away from it.
- 5 *touch*: I love the feel of fur against my skin.
- 6 *sixth sense*: I have often had the experience of not having written to an old friend for a long time and then our letters to each other suddenly cross in the post.

Unit 72

72.1 1 blush 2 shiver 3 chew 4 blink 5 wink

72.2 1 Someone is snoring. 4 Someone is coughing and/or sneezing. 2 Someone is yawning. 5 Someone's stomach is rumbling. 3 Someone is hiccupping. 6 Someone has burped.

72.3 1 blink 3 frown 5 sigh 7 snore 9 yawn 2 blush 4 grin 6 sneeze 8 wink

72.4 1 chewing 2 perspiring 3 lick 4 swallow 5 grin 6 shaken The central word is **hiccup**.

72.5 It is possible to draw bubble networks in any way that seems logical to you and that helps you to learn. You could group together words associated with **illness** – **sneeze**, **cough**, **shiver** and so on, or you could organise your networks around **parts of the body** – you could put **yawn**, **lick**, **bite**, etc. around the word **mouth**. Words that might be added to the networks include **hug**, **sip** and **stare**.

Unit 73

- 73.1** 1 toowit toowoo 3 woof 5 meow
2 baa 4 oink 6 cockadoodledoo
- 73.2** 1 crowing 2 mooing 3 barked 4 neighing 5 were clucking 6 purring
- 73.3** You would probably be unhappy to be called any of the adjectives in D except perhaps dogged.
- 73.4** 1 true
2 true
3 false – hoot, when used about people, is normally followed by the phrase ‘with laughter’.
4 false – if singing is called caterwauling, it must be very discordant and unpleasant to the ear.
5 true
6 false – grunting at someone suggests a lack of interest in that person.
- 73.5** Possible sentences:
2 As soon as she heard the phone, she flew across the room to answer it.
3 I learnt to swim when I was about seven years old.
4 The hillside was covered in loose stones and the walkers slithered uncertainly down the slope.
5 He hopped across the room to avoid putting any weight on his painful ankle.
6 The little children happily trotted off to school.
7 I’ll have to gallop through my work if I’m going to get it done on time.
- 73.6** 1 puppy or puppies (a spaniel is a kind of dog)
2 kittens (a tom is a male cat and a Siamese is a kind of cat)
3 cub(s) (polar bears like all other bears have cubs)
4 lambs (wool comes from sheep)
5 ducklings (the verb hatched makes it clear that the sentence is talking about a creature coming from an egg, and swim makes it clear that a water-bird is being described, rather than a hen, for example.)

Unit 74

- 74.1** 1 pie 2 ocean 3 clanger 4 plate 5 handle 6 block 7 shot
- 74.2** 1 springs to mind 3 just goes to show 5 leaves a lot to be desired
2 flies in the face of 4 ’re sitting pretty
- 74.3** Possible groupings:
be in a fix (be in trouble/have a serious problem), be up to it (be capable of something), be out of sorts (be unwell) all have in common the verb be, but also the fact that they are followed by prepositional phrases.
child’s play (very easy) and a fool’s errand (a wasted/pointless journey to get something) are both ’s idioms. (See Unit 81 for more of these.)
hold your tongue (be silent), hold your horses (wait before acting/speaking) both of course contain hold, but hold your tongue could also go with stay mum (be silent) because they are very close in meaning. The difference is that hold your tongue is often used in aggressive commands, e.g. Hold your tongue, you! (shut up!).
rough and ready (basic / lacking in comfort), odds and ends (small items difficult to group along with others), give or take (as in ‘It’ll cost £700, give or take £50’, meaning between £650 and £750 pounds approximately) are all binomials (phrases joined by and, but, or; see Unit 77).

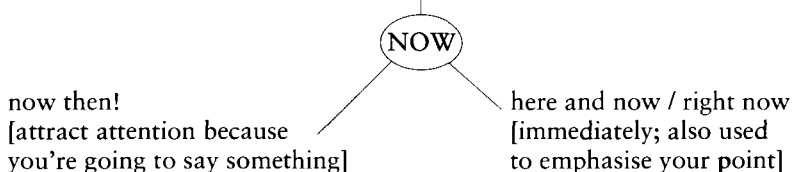
- 74.4** 1 go to bed
 2 a stronger, more informal version of **child's play**, i.e. simple, too easy for me.
 3 clearly means more than just 'unemployed', as he didn't have a home; it means totally without money or property, living and sleeping on the streets.

Unit 75

- 75.1** 1 to think of it 3 Talking of 5 reminds me
 2 ask me 4 you say 6 I was saying
- 75.2** 1 this and that *or* this, that and the other 2 that's it 3 this is it 4 that's that

75.3

now and then *or* every now and then
 (occasionally)



- 1 Do you want me to do it here and now, or can it wait?
 2 Now then, everybody, listen carefully. I have news for you.
 3 I bump into her in town (every) now and then, but not that often.

- 75.4** 1 When it comes to... 4 If the worst comes to the worst...
 2 As luck would have it... 5 As far as I'm concerned...
 3 If all else fails... 6 What with one thing and another...

Unit 76

- 76.1** 1 hatter 2 rake 3 mouse 4 post 5 bat
- 76.2** 1 slept 2 falling 3 dog 4 parrot 5 snow 6 a sheet
- 76.3** 1 as quick as a flash 3 as flat as a pancake 5 as strong as an ox
 2 as red as a beetroot 4 as fresh as a daisy

76.4

Across

1 brass 2 hatter 4 sheet 5 daisy 7 mouse 9 bone

Down

1 bat 2 hard 3 easy 6 ice 8 cucumber 10 feather

- 76.5** 1 He/She has eyes like a hawk. 3 She/He eats like a horse.
 2 Our plan went like a dream. 4 He/She has a head like a sieve.

Unit 77

- 77.1** 1 high and dry 3 safe and sound 5 rack and ruin
 2 rough and ready 4 wino and dined 6 prim and proper

- 77.2** law and order now and then hit and miss clean and tidy
 pick and choose sick and tired leaps and bounds

Suggested sentences:

- 1 There are lots of courses. You can pick and choose.
- 2 The flat looks all clean and tidy now for our visitors.
- 3 I'm sick and tired of traffic jams. I'm going to start using the train.
- 4 Finding the right people was rather difficult; sometimes it was hit and miss.
- 5 My knowledge of English has progressed in leaps and bounds since I've been using this book.
- 6 The new Prime Minister promised that law and order would be the most important priority.
- 7 I've seen her now and then, taking her dog for a walk.

- 77.3** 1 or 2 or 3 to 4 or 5 but 6 or

Unit 78

- 78.1** 1 ... of gold 3 ... as gold 5 ... fish
 2 ... as nails 4 ... off the mark 6 ... slow-coach

- 78.2** 1 a know-all 4 top of the class
 2 the teacher's pet 5 a lazy-bones (or you could say this person is **bone-idle**)
 3 a big-head

- 78.3** *Idioms with gold:* to be as good as gold / to have a heart of gold
Idioms with mark: to be quick/slow off the mark

- 1 ... a head like a sieve. 4 ... has her head screwed on.
- 2 ... a good head for figures. 5 ... has his head in the clouds.
- 3 ... have a head for heights.

Another example of a key-word family might be eye:

He only has eyes for Mary. (he never looks at other girls)

He has eyes in the back of his head. / He has eyes like a hawk. (said of someone who never misses anything, especially when people are doing something wrong)

She has an eye for antiques. (she is good at spotting them)

Look up eye in a good dictionary and see how many more idioms there are using the word.

- 78.4** a) your nerves (always with possessive, my, our, John's, etc.) b) the neck (always used with the)

- 78.5** 1 an odd-ball 2 middle-of-the-road 3 over the top

- 78.6** 1 If you say that someone's heart's in the right place, you mean they have good intentions and want to do good things, but have actually done something wrong/stupid/irritating without intending to.
- 2 If a person is a **bit of a square peg in a round hole**, we mean they do not fit in naturally, they are out of place in the situation they find themselves in.
- 3 If you say I **was miles away**, you mean you were not concentrating on what was happening or what someone was saying, and were thinking about something else.

Unit 79

- 79.1** *positive:* to be over the moon to feel/be as pleased as Punch
negative: to feel/be a bit down to feel/be browned off

79.2 *Possible answers:*

- 2 Probably quite browned off, or even in a (black) mood.
- 3 Over the moon, as pleased as Punch, on cloud nine.
- 4 Probably like a bear with a sore head *and* in a (black) mood!
- 5 Down in the dumps, a bit down, browned off.
- 6 On cloud nine, over the moon.

- 79.3**
- | | |
|---------------------------|---|
| 1 ... life out of me. | 5 ... out of my skin. |
| 2 ... the weather. | 6 ... eat a horse. |
| 3 ... as the day is long. | 7 ... form. (You could also say on top of the world.) |
| 4 ... cloud nine. | |

79.4 *Scorpio:*

get itchy feet – get a desire to be travelling or moving around.
(to be) **on the edge of your seat** – to be impatient, excited, in suspense, waiting for something to happen.

Leo:

to be **up in arms** – to be very angry and protesting loudly.
to be **in two minds** – unable to decide or make your mind up about something.

- 1 I'm in two minds about that job in Paris.
- 2 I've been on the edge of my seat all day. What's happened? Tell me!
- 3 Her son got itchy feet and went off to Uruguay.
- 4 Everyone was up in arms when they cancelled the outing.

- 79.5**
- | | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1 felt as if my head was going round | 4 to be in a black mood |
| 2 was scared out of his wits | 5 get carried away |
| 3 swell with pride | |

Example sentences:

- 1 So many people surrounded me all wanting to ask me questions. I felt as if my head was going round.
- 2 That programme about nuclear weapons scared me out of my wits.
- 3 Seeing her in the graduation procession made her parents swell with pride.
- 4 Careful! The boss is in a black mood today.
- 5 I know I shouldn't have listened to his lies, but I got carried away by his charming personality.

Unit 80

80.1 You might find the following idioms and expressions, depending on your dictionary:

- 1 let the cat out of the bag
to think you are the cat's whiskers (think you're wonderful)
fight like cat and dog (fight furiously)
there's not enough room to swing a cat (very little room / cramped conditions)
- 2 be in a fix
get a fix on your position (find out exactly where you are)
something is fixed in your mind/brain (you remember it clearly)
you fix somebody up with something (provide them with something)
- 3 pour oil on troubled waters
pour cold water on an idea / a plan (criticise something so that people don't want to do it any more)
pour your heart out to somebody (tell them all your troubles)
it's pouring with rain (raining very heavily)

- 81.5**
- 1 There is a verb **to ham it up**, which can be used to criticise an actor's performance if it is overdone and grossly exaggerated; we can call such an actor a **ham actor**.
 - 2 If you don't like something or somebody you can say it/he/she **just isn't my cup of tea**, which means you do not feel attracted to it or to the person.
 - 3 If you say **something is the icing on the cake** you are praising it as something extra good on something that is already good. 'Flying first class was wonderful, and being met at the other end by a limousine really was the icing on the cake.'
 - 4 If you call a person a **real nutcase**, you mean they are mad/crazy.
 - 5 If you say someone **knows his/her onions**, you are praising their knowledge of a particular subject.
 - 6 If you say a group of people really **are the cream**, you are saying they are the best possible representatives of a larger group. If they are the absolute best, you can say they are **the cream of the cream**.

Unit 82

82.1 *Suggested answers:*

- 1 It seems that Ann can't get a word in edgeways.
- 2 It seems that Mick got the wrong end of the stick.
- 3 It seems that Reg can't make head nor tail of what Dan is saying.
- 4 Madge seems to be talking down to Eric.

82.2 1 wrap up the discussion 2 talk rubbish 3 start the ball rolling 4 come/get to the point

82.3 1 speaks 2 talk 3 talking 4 talking

Unit 83

- 83.1**
- 1 B is driving a **hard bargain**.
 - 2 A could be described as someone who **has a finger in every pie**.
 - 3 A seems to have the song 'Lady in Red' **on the brain**.
 - 4 A seems to have **bought a pig in a poke**.

- 83.2**
- 1 Can I tell you about a **problem I have**? I just have to **get it off my chest**. It's been bothering me for a while now.
 - 2 They charged us £100 for a tiny room without a bath. It was a **real rip-off!** *or They really ripped us off!*
 - 3 There'll just be time to **have a bite to eat** before the show.
 - 4 I've got to **hand it to her**, Maria coped with the situation brilliantly. *or I've got to hand it to Maria, she coped with... etc.*
 - 5 I think I'll just go upstairs and **have a nap**, if nobody objects.
 - 6 Well, I **crashed out** on the sofa at about two o'clock, and the party was still in full swing.

83.3 *Possible answers:*

- 1 You might have to get a bite to eat on the way if you had to set off on a journey and didn't really have time to eat before leaving, or couldn't get anything before leaving, perhaps because it was too early.
- 2 Typically, hotels charge over the odds during festival weeks or if there is an important event on, for example, the Olympic Games. In short, any time when demand is very high.
- 3 Some people find it hard to **make any headway** in learning languages, but if you have got this far with this book, you don't have that problem!
- 4 You might be willing to pay through the nose if it is a performer you like very much and/or a once-in-a-lifetime opportunity to see that person.

- 83.4** 1 foot the bill 2 put your feet up 3 watch the box

Follow-up:

to have a word/name on the tip of your tongue: 'Oh dear, her name's on the tip of my tongue! What is it? Laura? Lona? Laurel? Something like that, anyway.'

to hold one's tongue: 'I'm going to hold my tongue. The last time I said anything it only caused trouble, so this time, I'll say nothing.'

to be head over heels for someone / head over heels in love with someone: 'Jim's absolutely head over heels for that new girl. He talks about her all day long and blushes every time her name's mentioned.'

to toe the line: 'The boss gave him a very hard time yesterday about his lazy attitude and all the absences he's had. He warned him he might lose his job. He's going to have to toe the line from now on.'

to tip-toe / to walk on tip-toes: 'We'll have to tip-toe past the children's bedroom. I don't want to wake them up.'

to get someone's back up: 'Sally won't get any sympathy from her workmates, in fact, quite the opposite, she seems to get everybody's back up with her selfish attitude.'

Unit 84

- 84.1** 1 Many hands make light work. 3 Too many cooks spoil the broth.
2 Don't put all your eggs in one basket.

- 84.2** 1 Never look a gift-horse in the mouth. (Both proverbs advise you to take advantage of good fortune when you have it in front of you.)
2 Don't cross your bridges before you come to them. (Both proverbs warn you not to anticipate future events.)
3 Never judge a book by its cover. (Both proverbs warn against trusting the external or superficial features of something.)
4 Familiarity breeds contempt. (**Absence makes the heart grow fonder** says that if you cannot be with someone or something you will love them/it more. **Familiarity breeds contempt** says that being with someone/something too much makes you hate them.)

- 84.3** 1 People who live in glasshouses shouldn't throw stones.
2 When the cat's away, the mice will play.
3 There's no smoke without fire.
4 Take care of the pence and the pounds will take care of themselves.

Unit 85

- 85.1** 1 prepare by mixing ingredients
2 manage to see
3 constitute (**make up** with this meaning is usually used in the passive)
4 put into bundles
5 understand (with this meaning **make out** is usually combined with 'can' or 'could' and 'not' or 'never')
6 making something more numerous or complete
7 claimed (**make out** implies that what is being claimed may well not be true)
8 renovate

- 85.2** 1 up 2 without 3 up 4 out 5 up

- 85.3** 1 ... make for the seaside. 4 Do them up...
 2 ... make for happiness. 5 ... make out...
 3 ... makes up to anyone...

85.4 Possible word forks:

make up a story
 her face
 an excuse
 the prescription
 the sum to £50

make out a cheque
 a case for her pardon
 some figures in the distance
 the outline of the coast
 a shopping list

do with a cup of tea
 a cold drink
 some help
 some advice
 something to eat

do up the bedroom
 your buttons
 her dress
 the house
 your coat

85.5 Possible answers:

Work: do the housework / some gardening / the washing-up / some shopping / the cooking / business with; make a bed / a profit/loss / a cup of tea

Trying, succeeding and failing: do your best; make an attempt / an effort / a mistake / the most of / a success of / a go of / a good/bad impression / a point of / allowances for.

Things you say: make arrangements / an agreement / a phone call / a suggestion / a decision / an excuse / fun of / a fuss of

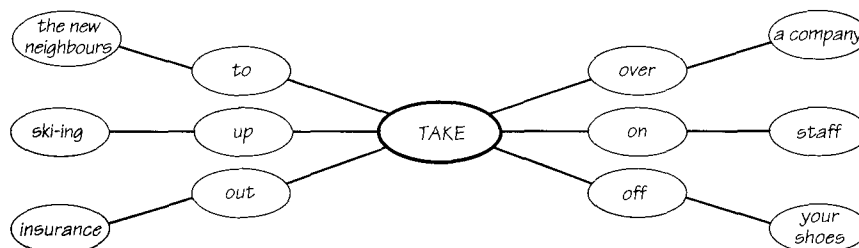
Physical things: make war / love / a noise / a gesture / a face

- 85.6** 1 WAR 3 profit 5 allowances for
 2 your best 4 business with 6 a good impression

Unit 86

- 86.1** 1 about/back 2 on 3 about 4 off 5 round 6 up

86.2 Here is one way of completing the diagram:

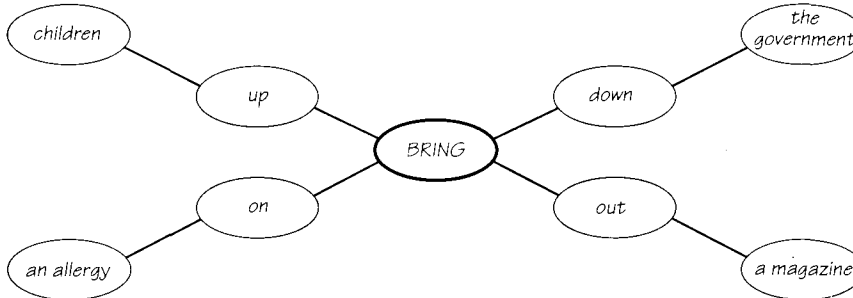


- 86.3** 1 The story of the film takes place in Casablanca during the war.
 2 Today's newspaper has brought to light some fascinating information about the Prime Minister.
 3 The situation was brought to a head when the union called for a strike.
 4 How does she always manage to take things in her stride?
 5 The view from the place took my breath away.
 6 He took advantage of her weakness at the time and she sold it to him.
 7 The main function of a nurse is to take care of the sick.
 8 You shouldn't take anyone or anything for granted.

86.4 Possible answers:

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 To bring down taxes, among other things. | 5 I've taken up hang-gliding recently. |
| 2 I took to her at once. | 6 It really seems to have taken off now. |
| 3 It seems to be brought on by strong sunlight. | 7 A person who takes off other people. |
| 4 He really takes after his father. | 8 I'll bring him round somehow. |

86.5 Possible answer:



- 86.6** 1 to bring into the open 3 to take care of 5 to take pride in
2 to take part in 4 to bring a law into force 6 to take control of

Unit 87

87.1 I don't often receive interesting advertising circulars these days. However, quite an unusual one came this morning. It was headed; 'Are you worried about **losing touch**?' And it went on, 'If so, **purchase** some of our special tablets today. Taking just one in the morning will help you **succeed** at work and at home. It will stop little problems from **depressing you** and will ensure that you **become** rich and successful with the minimum of effort on your behalf. Send just \$25 today and you will **receive** your tablets and your key to success within ten days.'

87.2 1 round 2 through 3 down 4 by 5 up to 6 through

87.3 A1 – B5 A2 – B3 A3 – B4 A4 – B2 A5 – B1

87.4 Possible answers:

- | | |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| 1 ... my old teddy bear. | 4 ... going to the meeting. |
| 2 ... Jack spilt tomato soup on Jill's dress. | 5 ... her father's death yet. |
| 3 ... study in weather like this. | 6 Living in such a small place... |

87.5 Some example sentences:

She was the first to **get off** the plane. (disembark from)
I don't understand what you are **getting at**. (trying to say)
They are due to **get back** at six. (return)
You **get ahead** in that company only if you are related to the boss. (succeed, are promoted)
Get lost! (colloquial) (Go away, stop bothering me!)

Unit 88

- 88.1** 1 They have recently established a committee on teenage smoking.
2 We try to reserve some money for our holiday every week.
3 Ignore all your negative feelings and listen with an open mind.
4 If we hadn't left home so late, we would have arrived on time.
5 The government's unpopular proposals caused a wave of protests.

- 88.2**
- 1 put out a bonfire / your host / the rubbish
 - 2 put forward an idea / a proposal / a suggestion
 - 3 put off a football match / an appointment / customers
 - 4 put across your feelings/ideas/opinions
 - 5 put up an umbrella / prices / a picture
 - 6 put on a concert / a limp / clothes
 - 7 put away papers/books/files
 - 8 put up with someone's behaviour / bad manners / temper

88.3 *Some possible answers:*

- 1 Let's put up some posters.
- 2 I haven't had time to put things away yet.
- 3 We'd better set out/off at 7 a.m.
- 4 Yes, of course, I can put you up.
- 5 The likely cost of it all has put me off.
- 6 He is hoping to set up a travel business of his own.

88.4 *Possible answers:*

- 1 He is very set in his ways.
- 2 He's bound to put two and two together if you keep on behaving like that.
- 3 She has set her sights on becoming Prime Minister.
- 4 She really puts my back up.
- 5 It's sound business advice not to put all your eggs in one basket.
- 6 Please put your mind to the problem in hand.
- 7 She has set her heart on getting a seat in Parliament.
- 8 She threw petrol on the rubbish and set fire to it.
- 9 She's very good at putting things in a nutshell.
- 10 The building was set on fire by terrorist action.
- 11 This is the first time I've ever set foot in the southern hemisphere.
- 12 We spent most of our evenings setting the world to rights rather than studying.
- 13 You really should put your foot down (with him) or there'll be trouble later.
- 14 If the teacher doesn't set a good example, the children certainly won't behave properly.

Unit 89

- 89.1**
- | | | | |
|-------------|------------|-------------------|----------|
| 1 continued | 3 attacked | 5 being published | 7 choose |
| 2 check | 4 succeed | 6 complaining | 8 used |

- 89.2**
- | | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| 1 ...to a decision. | 5 ...into fashion... |
| 2 ...into a fortune / money / a legacy. | 6 ...into operation/existence... |
| 3 ...into bloom. | 7 ...to blows. |
| 4 ...to a standstill. | 8 ...into view/sight. |

- 89.3**
- | | | |
|--------------------------|-------------|---------------------|
| 1 It goes without saying | 3 on the go | 5 have a go |
| 2 went to great lengths | 4 go far | 6 as far as it goes |

- 89.4**
- | | |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1 The firm went bankrupt. | 5 From a doting aunt. |
| 2 Only Jack's proposal. | 6 Any time after eight. |
| 3 Seven thirty, normally. | 7 A bit of a fight, I think. |
| 4 When I pulled a ligament. | |

89.5 *Possible answers:*

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 ...their horoscope was very favourable. | 5 ...it began to get quite noisy. |
| 2 ...put salt on it at once. | 6 ...having a boss who is younger than you. |
| 3 ...that skirt. | 7 ...Jack should be offered the job. |
| 4 ...such a terrible experience again. | 8 ...but also a box full of diaries. |

Unit 90

- 90.1** 1 back on 2 up to 3 up 4 into 5 to 6 up 7 after
- 90.2** 1 It's rather hard in the circumstances. 5 Why, what do you expect to happen?
2 Why, what's the... 6 She'll be lucky at the moment.
3 She never looks you in the eye. 7 I thought it was time I had a new look.
4 You'd never think she was a grandmother.
- 90.3** 1 ...the party.
2 ...anyone less fortunate than yourself.
3 ...the time the author spent in India.
4 ...I feel rather apprehensive.
5 ...the proposals made at the end of the report.
6 ...you next come to this country.
- 90.4** 1 By the looks of him, he's... 4 much to look at
2 looked...up and down 5 I don't like the look of
3 look small 6 look on the bright side of things
- 90.5** 1 look for your glasses / your purse / a new job / trouble / the meaning of life / love
2 look after a baby / a house / pets / yourself / number one (i.e. yourself in a selfish way, to the exclusion of others)
3 look through a report / a document / a magazine / the window
4 look to your parents / a friend / the boss

Unit 91

- 91.1** 1 over 2 to 3 down 4 up 5 down 6 slip 7 off
- 91.2** 1 Why doesn't she see through him?
2 I ran into Jack at the station yesterday.
3 I cooked the dinner yesterday. It's your turn (to do it) today.
4 I thought I was seeing things when I saw a monkey in the garden.
5 I wish you'd let me be.
6 He let us into the secret that they were planning to break into the house.
7 An enormous crowd turned out to hear the Prime Minister speak.
- 91.3** *Possible answers:*
1 ...the village will be cut off. 5 ...she refused to help him.
2 ...manager. 6 ...until the party was nearly over.
3 ...of the rope and fell into a crevasse. 7 ...of sugar.
4 ...those who came were very enthusiastic. 8 ...to letting him sleep on my floor.
- 91.4** *Some possible answers:*
1 I very much regret turning down an opportunity to work in Greece.
2 A train I was on once broke down making me terribly late for an important interview.
3 Big business runs the country as much as government, in my opinion.
4 I did an old lady a good turn when I helped her to get on the bus.
5 I'd like to break a ski-jumping record.
6 I'm sure it is possible for someone's heart to be broken.
7 Every New Year I resolve to turn over a new leaf – I decide to reply to all my letters promptly and to be generally much more organised.
8 I have to see to some shopping today.
9 My own home has never been broken into but a friend's house was once when I was staying with her.

91.5 Here are two possibilities for each of the verbs in the unit:

see

His parents have promised to see him through university.

It's hard to find your way round this building – I'll see you out.

run

Our dog was run over by a car.

She ran up an enormous bill at the dressmaker's.

turn

Please turn down your walkman – I can't concentrate.

I'm very tired. I'm going to turn in soon.

let

Let sleeping dogs lie.

This skirt is too tight – I'll have to let it out.

break

I'm broke – can you lend me five pounds for a few days?

Breaking in new shoes can be a painful experience.

Unit 92

- 92.1**
- | | |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1 proposal to end war | 4 royal jewels are stolen |
| 2 politician sells secrets to enemy | 5 marriage of famous actress |
| 3 satellite is not launched | 6 person who saw crime in danger |

92.2 Suggested answers:

- 1 Steps are being taken with the aim of providing more work for people.
- 2 Approval has been given to a plan to place restrictions on people's use of water.
- 3 A woman resigned from her job after undergoing some kind of unpleasant experience there.
- 4 A public opinion survey has looked into how people spend their money.
- 5 An attempt has been made to remove the Prime Minister from his/her position.
- 6 The Prince has promised to give support to his family.

- 92.3**
- | | |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1 makes a connection between | 4 promises |
| 2 reduces | 5 leads / is a major figure in |
| 3 explodes in | |

- 92.5** Make sure that you note down not only the headline but also a brief indication of what the story was about so that the headline makes sense when you revise your work later.

Unit 93

- 93.1**
- 1 American; a Brit would write **labour**.
 - 2 Brit; an American would write **center**.
 - 3 American; a Brit would be much less likely to use a word of this type, probably preferring a phrase like 'taken into hospital'. If s/he did, s/he would probably spell it **hospitalised**; however, the ending **ize** instead of **ise** is becoming much more common in British English these days.
 - 4 American; a Brit would spell it **theatre** (and would call it **cinema**.)
 - 5 Brit; an American would write **favor**.
 - 6 American, writing in an informal context; a Brit would write **through**.

- 93.2** *The pictures represent*
 for a Brit: *for an American:*
- | | | |
|----|-----------|---------------|
| 1 | TV aerial | TV antenna |
| 2 | wardrobe | closet |
| 3 | lift | elevator |
| 4 | vest | undershirt |
| 5 | sweets | candy |
| 6 | nappy | diaper |
| 7 | pram | baby carriage |
| 8 | curtains | drapes |
| 9 | sellotape | Scotch tape |
| 10 | lorry | truck |

- 93.4**
- | | | | |
|---|--------------------------|----|------------------------------|
| 1 | I had a puncture. | 6 | It's in the boot. |
| 2 | Pass me the biscuits. | 7 | Single or return? |
| 3 | It's in the wardrobe. | 8 | He left the tap on. |
| 4 | Open the curtains. | 9 | We're leaving in the autumn. |
| 5 | We've run out of petrol. | 10 | I hate standing in a queue. |

- 93.5**
- 1 You'd take the American to the bathroom and the Brit to the kitchen.
 - 2 Cold for the American but hot for the Brit.
 - 3 The Brit, because people do not usually talk about needing to change their underwear although you might well express the desire to change outer clothes.
 - 4 One flight for the American but two for the Brit.
 - 5 An American would be in a bank and a Brit in a café.

- 93.6** There are many other words you could add. Some might be: US eggplant (GB aubergine); US trashcan (GB rubbish bin); US German Shepherd (dog) (GB Alsatian).

Unit 94

- 94.1**
- | | | | | | |
|---|------------------------|---|----------------------|---|----------------|
| 1 | Australia | 3 | mosquitoes; barbecue | 5 | afternoon |
| 2 | journalist; university | 4 | business | 6 | adults/parents |

- 94.2**
- | | | | |
|---|------------------------|---|-----------------------|
| 1 | flee | 5 | the general public |
| 2 | catch (e.g. by police) | 6 | plimsolls, sneakers |
| 3 | capture/obtain | 7 | people awaiting trial |
| 4 | man who annoys girls | 8 | underwear |

- 94.3**
- | | | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|---|---|
| 1 | She gave birth to a baby girl. | 5 | A glass of whisky (in theory, a small one). |
| 2 | Church-bells. | 6 | Yes, he is. |
| 3 | No, it isn't, it's too dreary. | 7 | A lake. |
| 4 | Looking after the school buildings. | | |

- 94.4**
- 1 Probably not.
 - 2 It is in lots of small very tight plaits.
 - 3 When you have been working or exercising very hard, for instance.
 - 4 They improvise. In other words, they just play whatever comes into their heads, they don't follow any music score.

Unit 95

- 95.1**
- | | |
|--|---------------|
| 1 drunk | 5 money |
| 2 man | 6 food; drink |
| 3 stomach ache; doctor (note the colloquial or slang use of belly to mean stomach and quack to mean doctor) | 7 a car |
| 4 dinner jacket | 8 cup of tea |
| | 9 toilet |
| | 10 amazed |
- 95.2**
- | | |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1 Wicked! | 5 It's in a drawer, over here. |
| 2 He's a cop. | 6 He's in the nick. |
| 3 Let's take him home. | 7 Let's go for a run in the motor. |
| 4 Sure. I'll keep my eyes skinned. | |
- 95.3**
- | | |
|---------|--|
| 1 look | 4 teeth |
| 2 kids | 5 church (by hook or by crook means by any method, fair or unfair) |
| 3 table | 6 hat |
- 95.4**
- | | |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1 fellow (boyfriend) | 4 bricklayer |
| 2 breakfast | 5 a day off work claiming to be sick |
| 3 something given away free | 6 barbecue |

Unit 96

- 96.1**
- | | | |
|------------------|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1 on a bus | 6 outside a cinema | 11 on a packet of cigarettes |
| 2 in the country | 7 at the zoo | 12 on a motorway |
| 3 in a theatre | 8 at the beginning of a road | 13 at the entrance to a car park |
| 4 in the street | 9 on a wall | 14 on a cycle path |
| 5 outside a café | 10 at a supermarket check-out | 15 on a river bank |
- 96.2**
- 1 to bring a legal case against
 - 2 a punishment
 - 3 something which has been or is to be bought
 - 4 someone who goes on private land without permission
 - 5 not to do something
 - 6 to get off a means of public transport (bus, train)
 - 7 to forbid something
 - 8 large place where an audience sits
 - 9 to get off a bicycle or a horse
 - 10 a young person under the age of 18
 - 11 a means of transport
- 96.3**
- 1 You would see this notice in a shop and it lets people know that people who take things from the shop without paying will be taken to court.
 - 2 You would see this in a shop and it lets people know that the staff there speak French as well as English.
 - 3 You would see this at Customs and it lets people know that this is the way to go if they do not have any goods to pay duty on.
 - 4 You would see this in a shop window and it tells people that things are going to be sold off cheaply because the shop wants to get rid of its stock, perhaps because the shop is about to close down.
 - 5 You would see this outside an exhibition or a dance or concert hall perhaps and it lets people know that they need a ticket to get in.
 - 6 You would see this in the window of a hotel or bed and breakfast and it tells people that there are no free rooms there.

- 7 You would see this on a river bank and it tells people that fishing is not allowed.
- 8 You would see this notice outside a bicycle shop and it tells people that they can either hire or buy bicycles there.
- 9 You would see this outside a block of flats and it tells people that one flat is vacant for renting.
- 10 You would see this notice at the end of an escalator and it tells people that if they have a dog with them, they must carry it.
- 11 You would see this notice on public transport, a bus or an underground train, and it asks passengers to leave these seats for people who are elderly or find it difficult to move easily.

- 96.4**
- 1 Coffee now being served.
 - 2 Spanish spoken here.
 - 3 Kindly/Please refrain from smoking *or* Smoking (strictly) prohibited.
 - 4 Free-range eggs for sale.
 - 5 No bill-sticking.
 - 6 Rooms to let.

Unit 97

97.1 *Suggested re-wording:*

Now! Eagle Airlines offers even more to the business traveller who needs comfort.

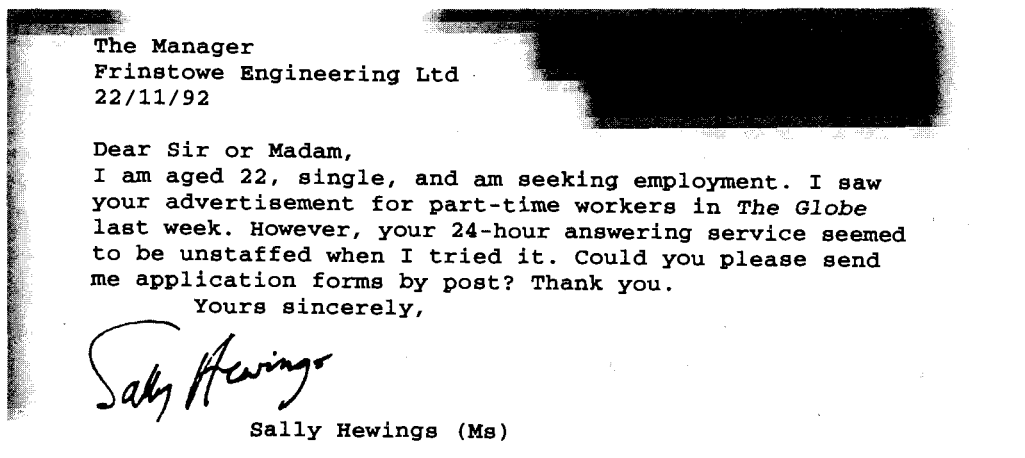
Let us fly you to your destination in first-class comfort, looked after by the best-trained cabin attendants (or cabin staff) in the world. Any business person knows that they must arrive fresh and ready for work no matter how long the journey. With Eagle Diplomat-Class you can do just that. And, what's more, your partner/spouse can travel with you on all intercontinental flights for only 25% of the normal fare! Your secretary can book you on any flights 24 hours a day on 0557-465769. All he or she has to do is lift the phone.

- 97.2**
- 1 conductor is marked on the word (-or); conductress used to be common but is less so now
 - 2 shepherd is socially marked as male, though shepherdess used to be common also
 - 3 cheerleader is socially marked as a female role
 - 4 typist is socially marked as female
 - 5 station master is marked on the word (-er); there never were any 'station mistresses', and nowadays they are called **station manager** in the UK, regardless of sex
 - 6 dressmaker is marked on the word as male, but socially marked as female
 - 7 general is socially marked as male
 - 8 detective is socially marked as male
 - 9 monk is linguistically marked as male (female = **nun**)
 - 10 milkman is marked on the word as male; **milkwoman** is quite common in the UK
 - 11 tailor is linguistically and socially marked as male

- 97.3** mankind – human beings spinster – single woman unmanned – unstaffed
air hostess – cabin attendant man-hours – person-hours

- 97.4**
- 1 ...a new chair/chairperson...
 - 2 Several fire-fighters and police officers were...
 - 3 A spokesperson for the store said the manager had...
 - 4 I wonder what time the post comes... (recently someone referred to **the postie** on a BBC programme, but, at the time of writing, this form has not become established)
 - 5 I can't see the bartender anywhere...
 - 6 Her brother's a nurse, and she's an author / a writer.

97.5 *Suggested answer:*



Note: In real life, the first sentence of this letter would be unnecessary. (However, the word 'single' is more neutral than 'spinster'.) Also, if Sally puts (Ms) at the end, she does not have to say she is female; it is obvious.

Unit 98

- 98.1**
- | | | |
|--|--|---|
| 1 Mr A. Carlton
Flat no. 5
Hale Cresc.
Borebridge | 2 Ms /məz/ P. Meldrum
c/o T. Fox
6, Marl Ave.
Preston | 3 N. Lowe & Co.
7, Bridge Rd.
Freeminster
UK |
|--|--|---|

Note: Flat could be abbreviated to F., though this is not so common. United Kingdom is abbreviated, but Great Britain is not normally abbreviated in addresses. Ms is unusual in that English words do not normally like to have a stressed /ə/ vowel. For this reason, many people say /mɪz/.

- 98.2**
- 1 Bachelor of Science (A)
 - 2 Federal Bureau of Investigation (A)
 - 3 Father (could also be 'French' or 'Franc') (C)
 - 4 extension (telephone) (C)
 - 5 compact disc (A)
 - 6 as soon as possible (A)
 - 7 personal identification number (B)
 - 8 for example (C/D)
 - 9 United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (B)

- 98.3** Memorandum from Mister Braneless (Managing Director)
To: All staff
Date: The third of May, 1991 Reference: 04056/DC

May I remind you that all new laboratory equipment should be registered with Stores and Supplies, Room 354 (extension 2683). Please note: new items must be notified before five o'clock in the afternoon on the last day of the month of purchase, that is, within the current budgeting month. All account numbers must be recorded.

- 98.4** 1 OAPs – British English for ‘Old age pensioners’: retired people or senior citizens; on a museum entrance.
 2 WC – ‘water closet’: a lavatory; Gents – gentlemen; on a door in a pub.
 3 US – United States of America; POWs – prisoners of war; newspaper headline.
 4 CFC – Chloro-fluoro-carbons: nasty chemicals sometimes found in sprays, which can damage the ozone layer; on an aerosol can.
 5 Dep – depart; Arr – arrive; on an airline timetable.

98.5 Across

Down

Unit 99

- 1 an irresistible urge to collect things
- 2 a house constructed solely from natural materials
- 3 a female of limited intelligence but high sex appeal
- 4 a specially bred miniaturised form of vegetable
- 5 an indoor version of American football
- 6 a hypothetical miniaturised device capable of making its way through bodily passages and performing various tasks

- | | | |
|---------------------|----------------------|-----------------|
| 1 collectomania (F) | 3 bimbo (D) | 5 arenaball (C) |
| 2 bio-house (D) | 4 mini-vegetable (B) | 6 microbot (B) |

- | | |
|--|------------------|
| 1 ozone-/eco-friendly | 5 teleworking |
| 2 Gorbymania | 6 cardboard city |
| 3 singlehood | 7 couch potato |
| 4 monoboardering (<i>or</i> snow-surfing) | 8 sound-bites |

99.3 There are many possible answers to this question and it is, of course hard to predict which words will stand the test of time. I would suggest **faxable**, **teleworking** and **singlehood** as they express concepts that are already useful and are likely to remain so, whereas **vogueing** and **Gorbymania** are likely to go out-of-date quickly.

- 99.4**
- 1 cooking by microwave oven
 - 2 a building which houses a number of different cinemas
 - 3 skiing uphill
 - 4 high-ranking, powerful members of international organisations
 - 5 the study of humour
 - 6 practically active
 - 7 credit cards for use in a particular shop
 - 8 babies born at a time when the birth-rate was particularly high

Unit 100

100.1

'Well, where shall I start? It was last summer and we were just sitting in the garden, sort of doing nothing much. Anyway, I looked up and...see we have this kind of long wall at the end of the garden, and it's...like...a motorway for cats, for instance, that big fat black one you saw, well, that one considers it has a right of way over our vegetable patch, so...where was I? Yes, I was looking at that wall, you know, day-dreaming as usual, and all of a sudden there was this new cat I'd never seen before, or rather, it wasn't an ordinary cat at all...I mean, you'll never believe what it was...'

Comments:

Where/How shall I start/begin? This is a very common marker at the beginning of a story or monologue while the speaker is composing his/her thoughts.

Anyway is probably the most common marker in spoken story-telling to divide up the story into its different stages (introduction/main plot/resolution, etc.)

See is often used in informal talk instead of you see, when someone is clarifying or explaining something.

Like is often used when the speaker hesitates, or to make something less precise, a little more vague.

Where was I? is used when we want to come back to the main subject we were talking about after an interruption or diversion into another point or topic.

Yes is often used when we resume what we were talking about; it does not have to be an answer to a question from someone. **No** is also used in exactly the same way and could have been used here instead of yes.

Or rather is used when you change to a different word or a better/more accurate way of saying what you want to say.

I mean is used when you want to explain something or expand or illustrate what you are saying.

This extract is typical of the number of markers found in everyday informal talk. The speaker is not a 'lazy' or 'bad' speaker; everyone uses markers, even if they are not conscious of it or do not want to admit it! Informal conversation *without* markers sounds rather odd and strained, and a little too formal.

100.2 Possible answers:

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>1 A: Are you a football fan?
B: Well, I like it; I wouldn't say I was a fan.</p> <p>2 A: I'll take care of these.
B: Right, that's everything.
A: Fine, so see you next week.
B: Good. That was a very useful meeting.</p> <p>3 A: It was last Monday I was coming home from work. I saw this ragged old man approaching me. Anyway, I stopped him...
B: Jim Dibble!
A: Hang on! Let me tell you what happened first.</p> | <p>4 A: Which number is yours?
B: Let me see... it's that one here, yes, this one.</p> <p>5 A: He's looking exhausted.
B: Yes, he is.
A: Mind you, he has an awful lot of 'responsibility, so it's hardly surprising.</p> <p>6 A: What do you mean 'cold'?
B: Well, she's not friendly, very distant, so to speak. Last week I gave her a jolly smile and she... like...scowled at me. the way you smile at people,
A: Well what do you expect? Look, I've seen the way you smile at people it sort of puts them off.</p> |
|--|--|

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>100.3</p> <p>1 First of all
2 in other words
3 For example / For instance
4 Next
5 as it were / so to speak</p> | <p>6 Lastly
7 In summary (In conclusion would not be suitable here, since it just means 'this is the end of the text', whereas this sentence provides a summing up of the arguments in the text.)</p> |
|--|---|

Follow-up:

If it is difficult or impossible for you to get hold of tape-recordings of natural conversation, you can find transcripts in D. Crystal and D. Davy's *Advanced Conversational English* (London: Longman, 1975), where you will find a wide range of markers in actual use.

Phonetic symbols

Vowel sounds

<i>Symbol</i>	<i>Examples</i>
/i:/	sleep me
/ɪ/	happy recipe
/ɪ/	pin dinner
/ʊ/	foot could pull
/u:/	do shoe through
/e/	red head said
/ə/	arrive father colour
/ɜ:/	turn bird work
/ɔ:/	sort thought walk
/æ/	cat black
/ʌ/	sun enough wonder
/ɒ/	got watch sock
/ɑ:/	part heart laugh
/eɪ/	name late aim
/aɪ/	my idea time
/ɔɪ/	boy noise
/eə/	pair where bear
/ɪə/	hear beer
/ɔʊ/	go home show
/aʊ/	out cow
/ʊə/	pure fewer

Consonant sounds

<i>Symbol</i>	<i>Examples</i>
/p/	put
/b/	book
/t/	take
/d/	dog
/k/	car kick
/g/	go guarantee
/tʃ/	catch church
/dʒ/	age lounge
/f/	for cough
/v/	love vehicle
/θ/	thick path
/ð/	this mother
/s/	since rice
/z/	zoo houses
/ʃ/	shop sugar machine
/ʒ/	pleasure usual vision
/h/	hear hotel
/m/	make
/n/	name now
/ŋ/	bring
/l/	look while
/r/	road
/j/	young
/w/	wear

Index

The numbers in the index are Unit numbers not page numbers.

- able /'eɪbəl/ 34
- abode /ə'bəʊd/ 7
- abolish /ə'bɒlɪʃ/ 85
- abrupt /ə'brʌpt/ 34
- abscond /əb'skɒnd/ 94
- absent-minded 12
- absolutely 57, 60
- absorb /əb'zɔ:b/ 86
- abstract noun 11
- absurdity /əb'sɜ:di/ 11
- accept /ək'sept/ 7, 23
- accident 38
- accommodation 26, 50, 88
 - (~ agency) 45
- accomplish /ə'kʌmplɪʃ/
 - (~ment) 65
- accountant 40
- accuse (~d) 55
- ace /eɪs/ 95
- achieve /ə'tʃi:v/ (~ment) 11, 65
- aching /'eɪkɪŋ/ 48
- acknowledge /ək'nɒlɪdʒ/ 23
- acoustics /ə'ku:stɪks/ 27
- acquaintance /ə'kweɪntəns/ 35
- acquit /ə'kwɪt/ 55
- act 42
- action 11
- active 8
- actor/actress 8, 26, 29, 97
- addition /ə'dɪʃən/ 51
- address 7 (~ee) 8
- adjective /'ædʒəktɪv/ 4
- adjustment /ə'dʒʌsmənt/ 11
- administrator 40
- admire /əd'maɪə/ 35
- admission 8, 96
- admit (~tedly) 23
- adore 35 (-ration) (-ring) 69
- adulthood 11
- advance 87
- adverb 4
- advert (ad) 7, 98
- advertise (~r) (~ment) 10
- advertocracy /ædvə'tɒkrəsi/ 99
- advice /əd'vaɪs/ 1, 26, 30
- adviser /əd'vaɪzə/ 40
- aerial /'eəriəl/ 53, 93
- aerobics /eə'rəʊbɪks/ 27
- aeroplane 49
- affair /ə'feə/ 35
- affection (~ate) 11, 69
- affirmative 95
- African 31
- Afro-Caribbean 31
- after all 23
- after 43
- afterwards 20
- against 67
- ageism /'eɪdʒɪzəm/ 99
- agency /'eɪdʒənsi/ 45
- aggressive 34 (~ness) 11
- agitation /ædʒɪ'teɪʃən/ 30
- agreement 65, 85, 89
- agriculture /'ægrɪkʌltʃə/ 44
- aid /eɪd/ 92
- aim /eɪm/ 65
- air 19, 30, 49
 - (~conditioned) 12, 13
- air hostess 97
- air traffic control 13 (~ler) 49
- aircraft 49
- alarm clock 13
- Albanian /æl'beɪniən/ 31
- alcoholic /ælkə'hɒlɪk/ 7
- alcove /ælkəʊv/ 16
- algebra /'ældʒəbrə/ 16
- alight /ə'laɪt/ 7, 96
- alive /ə'laɪv/ 18
- all in 79
- all or nothing 77
- all-out 12
- allergic /ə'lɜ:dʒɪk/ 48
- alley /'æli/ 41
- allocate /'æləkeɪt/ 62
- allowances 85
- allowed 19
- along with / alongside 24
- Alsatian /æl'seɪʃən/ 93
- alteration 8
- alternative 60
- although /ɔ:l'dəʊ/ 23
- amazement /ə'meɪzmənt/ 11
- ambassador 54
- ambition (~ious) 34, 65
- ambulance /'æmbjələns/ 29
- American 31, 93
- amount /ə'maʊnt/ 57
- amuse /ə'mju:z/ (~d) (~ment) 11
- analyse /'ænəlaɪz/ (-lysis) 52
- anarchist /'ænəkɪst/ 8
- anchor /'æŋkə/ 49
- and so on (and so forth) 24
- anger /'æŋɡə/ (-gry) (-grily) 11, 68, 70
- angle /'æŋɡəl/ 51
- angora /æŋ'ɡɔ:rə/ 15
- animosity /æni'mɒsɪti/ 11
- ankle /'æŋkəl/ 48
- anklebiters 95
- annoy /ə'nɔɪ/ 87
- anonymity /ænə'nɪmɪti/ 11
- anorak /'ænərək/ 16
- anorexic /ænə'reksɪk/ 33
- answerphone 52
- antenna /æn'tenə/ 93
- anti- 9
- antonym /'æntənɪm/ 4
- anxiety /æŋ'zaɪəti/ (-xious) /'æŋʃəs/ (-xiously) 68, 70
- anyway 100
- apart from 24
- apartment 93
- apostrophe /ə'pɒstrəfi/ 3, 18
- appeal (~ing) 69
- appear 90
- appendix /ə'pendɪks/ 48
- appetite /'æpɪtaɪt/ 48
- apple pie 43
- apples and pears 95
- apply for 40
- appointment 7, 8, 88
- appreciate /ə'pri:ʃi:et/ 45, 96
- apprehension /æpri'henʃən/ (~sive) 68
- apprenticeship /ə'prentɪʃɪp/ 11
- approach /ə'prəʊtʃ/ 25
- Arabic 31
- arachnophobia /ə'ræk'nə'fəʊbiə/ 69
- archer /'ɑ:tʃə/ 27 (-y) 41
- architect /'ɑ:kɪtekt/ 40
- architecture 45
- area /'eəriə/ 11, 44, 45
- arenaball 99
- Argentinian /ɑ:dʒən'tɪniən/ 31
- argue /ɑ:gju:/ (-guably) 11
- argument (~ative) 11, 25, 34, 70
- arise out of 22
- arithmetic /ə'rɪθmətɪk/ (~al) (~ian) 18
- Armenian /ɑ:'mi:niən/ 31
- arms race 13
- aromatic /ərə'mætɪk/ 71
- arrangement /ə'reɪŋdʒmənt/ 8, 85

- arrival 8
 arrogant /'ærəgənt/ 34, 73
 arrow /'ærəu/ 41
 arseholed /'ɑ:ʃəʊld/ 95
 arson /ɑ:sən/ (~ist) 55
 art 42, 45
 article 3, 7, 30, 53
 arts centre 45
 arvo /'ɑ:vəu/ 94
 as a result 22
 as far as...goes 89
 as far as I'm concerned 75
 as you/I say (was saying) 75
 as it were 100
 as long as 21
 as soon as 20
 as well as 24
 Asian /'eɪʒən/ 31
 asparagus /əs'pærəgəs/ 43
 aspect /'æspekt/ 25
 assailant /ə'seɪlənt/ 55
 assault /ə'sɒlt/ 55
 assembly line 13
 assertive /ə'sɜ:tɪv/ 34
 assessment /ə'sesmənt/ 25
 astonishment
 /əs'tɒnɪʃmənt/ 11
 astrophysics /æstrəʊ'fɪzɪks/ 52
 at a time / at times 58
 at death's door 79
 at the very time 20
 athlete /'æθli:t/ 26 (-tics) 27
 atlas /'ætɫəs/ 15
 atmosphere /'ætməsfɪə/
 (-ric) 45
 attack 89
 attain /ə'teɪn/ (~able) (~ment)
 65
 attempt /ə'tempt/ 85
 attend 2
 attentive (~ness) 11
 attic /'ætɪk/ 36
 attitude /'ætɪtʃu:d/ 25
 attract (~ion) (~iveness) 11, 69
 aubergine /'əʊbəʒi:n/
 16, 43, 93
 auburn /'ɔ:bən/ 5, 33
 auditorium /ɔ:drɪ'tɔ:rɪəm/ 96
 Australian 31, 94
 author/authoress /'ɔ:θə/ 97
 authorities /ɔ:'θɒrɪti:z/ 27
 auto-pilot 9
 autobiography 9
 autocue 9
 autograph 9
 automobile 9
 avant garde 16
 average /'ævərɪdʒ/ 57
 avoid /ə'vɔɪd/ 49, 87
 awfully /'ɔ:flɪ/ 57
 awkward customer 78
 awkwardness 11
 axe /æks/ 92
 aye /aɪ/ 94
 baa /ba:/ 73
 baby carriage 93
 baby-boomer 99
 babysitter 13
 babyhood 11
 bachelor /'bætʃələ/ 97
 back 49, 92
 (~ and forth) (~ to front) 77
 back to square one 80
 bad manners 88
 bad-tempered 34
 badly-dressed 47
 badminton 41
 baggage /'bæɡɪdʒ/ 26, 93
 baggy /'bæɡi/ 47
 bags of 57
 bairn /beən/ 94
 bake 43
 baked beans 66
 balalaika /bələ'lɑ:kə/ 16
 balcony /'bælkəni/ 36
 bald /bɔ:ld/ 33 (~-headed) 12
 ball 2, 41 (on the ~) 81
 ballerina 16
 ballet /'bæleɪ/ 42
 balloon /bə'lu:n/ 49
 ballot paper 54
 bandage /'bændɪdʒ/ 48
 bandit
 bang 37, 61
 Bangladeshi /bæŋɡlə'deʃi/ 31
 bank (~loan/statement) 56
 (~ account) 13 (~note) 93
 (~rupt) 89
 bar 30, 92
 (~maid/man/tender) 40, 97
 barbecued /'bɑ:bəkju:d/ 43
 barber /'bɑ:bə/ 97
 barbie /'bɑ:bi/ 94
 bargain /'bɑ:gɪn/ 56
 bark 46, 73
 (~ing up the wrong tree) 74
 barn 40
 baroque /bə'rɒk/ 45
 barrage /'bærɑ:ʒ/ 29
 barrel 66
 barren 44
 baseball bat 41
 basement 36
 bash 17
 basin 44, 66
 basket 66
 basketball 45
 bat 41, 46
 bathed /beɪðd/ 19
 battery farming 44
 bay 44
 bazaar /bə'zɑ:/ 16
 beach 44
 beak 46
 beam 61
 bean 43
 bear /beə/ 46 (~ with a sore
 head) 76, 79
 beard /'biəd/ 33
 beat 41, 94
 beaut /bju:t/ 94
 beauty 11 (-tify) 8
 bed linen 29
 bed rest 48
 bedlam /'bedləm/ 15
 bedsit 36
 beetroot /'bi:tru:t/ 43
 bee 46 (the ~'s knees) 81
 beg (-ggar) 70
 behaviour /bɪ'heɪvjə/ 88
 Belgian /'beldʒən/ 31
 belief /bɪ'li:f/ 11, 25, 67
 belongings 62
 belt 47
 ben /ben/ 94
 benefit /'benəfɪt/ 56
 besides 24
 best 85
 beverage /'bevərɪdʒ/ 7
 bi- 9
 bid 92
 bidet /'bi:deɪ/ 16
 big-head 78 (~ed) 12
 bike /baɪk/ 7, 98
 bilingual /baɪ'lɪŋɡwəl/ 9, 31
 bill 56, 91, 93, 95
 bill-sticking 96
 billiards /'bɪljədʒ/ 27, 41
 billion 51
 bimbo /'bɪmbəu/ 99
 bin-liner 36
 binoculars /bɪ'nɒkjələz/ 27
 bio- 98
 bio-degradable 44
 bio-house 99
 bioclimatology
 /baɪəʊklaɪmə'tɒlədʒi/ 52
 biography /baɪ'ɒɡrəfi/ 42
 birch /bɜ:tʃ/ 46
 biro /'baɪəu/ 15

- birth control 13
 biscuit(s) 66, 93
 (take the ~) 74, 81
 bistro /'bi:stɹəʊ/ 16
 (a) bit 30, 57, 78
 bitchy /'bɪtʃi/ 72
 bite /baɪt/ 72
 bitter (~ly) (~ness) 11, 43, 70, 71
 bizzo /'bɪzəʊ/ 94
 black and white 77
 (as) black as night 76
 (in a) black mood 79
 (in the) black 56
 Black English 94
 black eye 48
 blackcurrant 43
 blackmail (~er) 55
 blade 30
 bland /blænd/ 43
 blast 92
 blaze /bleɪz/ 92
 bleat /bli:t/ 73
 bleep 61
 (as) blind as a bat 76
 blink 72
 blisters /'blɪstəz/ 48
 blitz 16
 blizzard /'blɪzəd/ 32
 block 37
 block capitals 4
 bloke /bləʊk/ 95
 blonde 33
 blood donor/pressure/ties 13, 48
 bloom /blu:m/ 89
 blossom /'blɒsəm/ 46
 blouse /blaʊz/ 47
 blow-out /'bləʊwaʊt/ 93
 blue-eyed 12
 blunt /blʌnt/ 34
 blush /blʌʃ/ 72
 blustery /'blʌstəri/ 32
 board 7, 40, 98
 board up 38
 boast (~ful) 70
 bog 95
 boil 43 (~ing) 32, 68
 (as) bold as brass 76
 boldly 70
 Bolivian /bə'li:vɪən/ 31
 bonanza /bə'nænzə/ 16
 bonfire 88
 bonnet 49, 93
 bonny /'bɒni/ 94
 bonsai /'bɒnzai/ 16
 book 50 (~case) 3 (~token) 13
 (~seller) 53
 boost /bu:st/ 92
 boot(s) 47, 49, 93 (-tee) 5
 booze /bu:z/ 7, 95
 boredom /'bɔ:dəm/ 11
 borrow 62
 bosh /bɒʃ/ 16
 bosom /'bɒzəm/ 94
 boss 40, 92 (~y) 34
 botany /'bɒtəni/ 52
 bother /'bɒðə/ 50, 65
 bottle bank 44, 45
 (~-opener) 8
 bough /bau/ 18, 46
 bounce /baʊns/ 2
 boutique /bu:'ti:k/ 16
 bow /bau/ /bəʊ/ 19, 41
 bowl /bəʊl/ 66
 bowler 15
 bowls 27, 41
 box 36, 66, 83
 boxing /'bɒksɪŋ/ 41
 boycott /'bɔɪkɒt/ 15
 braces /'breɪsɪz/ 27, 47
 brackets 4
 brae /breɪ/ 94
 braille 15 /breɪl/
 brain 48 (~y) 7, 34 (~less) 34
 (~ drain) 13
 brakes /breɪks/ 49
 branch /braɪntʃ/ 46
 brand-new /bræn'nju:/ 12
 brass 95
 Brazilian /brə'zɪliən/ 31
 bread 30, 95
 breadth /bredθ/ 11
 break, *expressions with* 35, 37, 38, 41, 48, 91
 break-in/-out/-up 14
 breakdown/through 14
 breast /brest/ 46
 breath /breθ/,
 (~e) /bri:ð/ 30, 72
 (~less) 48 (~taking) 2
 breeze (-zy) 32
 brekkie /'breki/ 95
 bribery /'braɪbəri/ 55
 brick 26
 brickie /'brɪki/ 95
 bridge 49
 bright (~ness) 34, 64
 bright-eyed 12
 brill 95
 brilliant 2
 bring, *expressions with* 22, 86
 British-made 12
 Briton /'brɪtən/ 31, 92
 broad (~en) 59 (~-minded) 12,
 34 (~-shouldered) 12
 broadcast 53 (~er) 40
 broccoli /'brɒkəli/ 43
 broke /brəʊk/ 91
 broken-down 12
 brook /brʊk/ 44
 brotherhood 8, 11
 (as) brown as a berry 76
 browned off 79
 brown sauce 43
 brown-eyed 12
 bruise /bru:z/ 37, 48, 89
 brush 36
 brusque /brʊsk/ 34
 brutal /'bru:təl/ 8 (~ity) 11
 bucket /'bʌkɪt/ 40, 66
 buckle /'bʌkəl/ 47
 bud /bʌd/ 46
 Buddhism /'bʊdɪzəm/ 8, 67
 buffet /'bʌfeɪ/ 49
 bug /bʌg/ 48
 build /bɪld/ 33 (~er) 40
 building society 56
 built-up 12
 Bulgarian 31
 (in) bulk 56
 bull by the horns, take the 80
 bull in a china shop 76, 80
 bullet-proof 12
 bump /bʌmp/ 37
 bunch /bʌntʃ/ 29
 bungalow /'bʌŋɡələʊ/ 36
 bunk /bʌŋk/ 49
 buoy /bəɪ/ 49
 burger 43
 burglar /bɜ:glə/ (~y) 55, 97
 (~ alarm) 13
 burgle /bɜ:glə/ 55
 Burmese 31
 burn /bɜ:n/ 18, 94
 burnt-out 12
 burp /bɜ:p/ 72
 burst /bɜ:st/ 2
 bury the hatchet 80
 bus service/conductor 45, 49
 busby /'bʌzbɪ/ 15
 business /'bɪznɪs/ 85
 (~man/woman/person) 97
 hustling /'hʌslɪŋ/ 45
 butcher /'bʊtʃə/ 97
 butter somebody up 81
 butterfly 73
 button /'bʌtən/ 47, 52
 by the look(s) of it 90
 by the time 20, 58

- by(e)-election 54
by-pass 14
- cab 93
cabbage /'kæbɪdʒ/ 43
cabin 49
cabin attendant 97
cabinet /'kæbɪnət/ 54
Caesarean /sə'zeəriən/ 15
café /'kæfeɪ/ 45
caftan /'kæftən/ 16
Cain and Abel 95
cake 28, 30 (~tin) 37
calf /kɑːf/ 43, 73
call /kɔːl/ 7
calm /kɑːm/ 11, 18
camcorder /'kæmkɔːdə/ 52, 53
camel /'kæmə/ 46
camera operator 53
camp-site 50
can 66 (~ opener) 8
Canadian 31
cancer /'kænsə/ 48
candidate /'kændɪdɪt/ 54
candy 93
canoe /kə'nuː/ (-noist) 41, 49
canter /'kæntə/ 15
cap /kæp/ 41
cape /keɪp/ 44
capital 44 (~ punishment) 86
captain /'kæptɪn/ 49
captivate 69
car hire/park/rental 45, 62
carafe /kə'ræf/ 16
caravan /'kærəvən/ 2, 16
card(s) 18, 66
cardboard city 99
cardigan /'kɑːdɪɡən/ 15, 47
care for 69, 86
career /kə'riə/ 39
carefree /'keəfri/ 12
carelessness 11
caring /'keərɪŋ/ 69
carpenter 40
carrier bag 66
carrot 43
carton /'kɑːtən/ 30, 66
cartoon /kɑː'tuːn/ 53
case /keɪs/ 26, 55, 66, 98
cash /kæʃ/ 56
cashmere /'kæʃmɪə/ 15
casino /kə'siːnəʊ/ 16
casserole /'kæsərəʊl/ 43
cast 29, 42
cast-off 12
castle /'kɑːsəl/ /'kæsl/ 18
casual /'kæʒuəl/ 5
- casualty /'kæʒuəlti/ 38
(the) cat's whiskers 80, 81
(let the) cat out of the bag 80
Catalan 31
catastrophe /kə'tæstrəfi/ 1, 18
cater /'keɪtə/ 45, 62
caterpillar /'kætəpɪlə/ 73
caterwaul /kætəwɔːl/ 73
cathedral /kə'thiːdrəl/ 45
cattle /'kætəl/ 49
catty /'kæti/ 73
cauliflower /'kɒlɪflaʊə/ 43
cause /kɔːz/ 22, 86, 88
 (~a stir) 80
caused by 33
CD /sɪˈdiː/ (~ player) 52, 98
cease /siːs/ 3
celery /'seləri/ 43
cellar /'selə/ 36, 66
cellist /'tʃelɪst/ 8
censor /'sensə/ 53
centralise 8
ceramic /sə'ræmɪk/ 42
cereal /siːrɪəl/ 66
certain 60
chain 44
chair (person/man/woman) 97
chairmanship 11
chalk /tʃɔːk/ 18, 40
chamber /'tʃeɪmbə/ 54
champagne /'ʃæmpɛn/ 15
championship
 /'tʃæmpɪənʃɪp/ 11
chance 11, 60
change 47, 49, 87
chaos /'keɪɒs/ 30
chap /tʃæp/ 3, 7
chapter 42
charge /tʃɑːʒ/ 55
charity 11
charm /tʃɑːm/ 26, 45
chat (~ show) 4, 53
chauffeur /'ʃəʊfə/ 16, 49
chauvinist /'ʃəʊvənɪst/ 15
check 89, 93
check-in 49
check-out 14
checked /tʃekt/ 47
cheerful (~ness) (~ly) 12, 68, 70
cheerio /'tʃiːrɪəʊ/ 7
cheerleader 97
chef /ʃef/ 40
chemical /'kemɪkəl/ 52
chemist (~ry) 52
cheque /tʃek/ 56
chest (~ pain) 48
- chew /tʃuː/ 72
chic /ʃiːk/ 47, 94
chicken 73
chickenpox 48
child benefit 56
child's play 74
child-minder 40
childhood 8, 11
Chilean /'tʃɪliən/ 31
chilli /'tʃɪli/ 71
chilly /'tʃɪli/ 1, 32
chime /tʃaɪm/ 61
china /'tʃaɪnə/ 66
Chinese 31
chip 37
 (a ~ off the old block) 74
chives /tʃaɪvz/ 43
chocolate(s) /'tʃɒklət/ 28, 30, 66
choice /tʃɔɪs/ 60
cholera /'kɒlərə/ 38
chubby /'tʃʌbi/ 33
cigarettes 66
cinema /'sɪnəmə/ 42
cinplex /sɪnɪpleks/ 99
cinnamon /'sɪnəmən/ 43
cipher /'saɪfə/ 16
circle /'sɜːkl/ (-cular) 2, 51
circumference
 /'sɜːkəmfərəns/ 51
circumspect /'sɜːkəmspekt/ 10
circumstance
 /'sɜːkəmstæns/ 21
citizen /'sɪtɪzən/ 45 (~ship) 11
citizens' advice bureau, 45
City Hall 45
civil engineering /'sɪvəl/ 52
civil servant 40
civil war 38
claim /kleɪm/ 25, 85
clang /klæŋ/ 17, 61
clank /klæŋk/ 17
clap 17, 30
clash /klæʃ/ 17, 92
classical 42, 45
Classics 27
classmate 35
clatter /'klætə/ 17, 61
claw /kloː/ 46
clean and tidy 77
cleaner 8, 40
clear-out 14
clearance sale 96
clergyperson
 /'klɜːdʒɪpɜːsən/ 99
clerk /kluːk/ 40
clever 7, 34

click /kɪk/ 44
 climb /klaɪm/ 18, 50
 clink /kɪŋk/ 17
 clip-clop 17
 close /kloʊs/ 32
 close-fitting 47
 closet /kloʊzɪt/ 93, 66
 cloth /kloth/ 26, 28, 66
 clothes /kloʊðz/ 27, 66, 88
 clothing /'kloʊðɪŋ/ 26, 30
 (on) cloud nine 79
 cloudless 8
 cluck /klʌk/ 73
 clump /klʌmp/ 29
 coach /kaʊtʃ/ 49
 coal /kəʊl/ 26, 30, 66
 coarse /kɔːs/ 64
 coaster /'kəʊstə/ 36
 coat-hanger 8, 36
 cobra /'kəʊbrə/ 16
 cock 73
 cockadoodledoo 73
 cackle /'kɒkəl/ 43
 cockpit /'kɒkpɪt/ 49
 cocky /'kɒki/ 73
 cocoa /'kəʊkəʊ/ 66
 cod 43
 coffee (~pot) 28, 66
 coin /kɔɪn/ 1
 cold 48, 68 (a ~ fish) 78
 collapse /kə'leɪps/ 65
 collar 47
 colleague /'kɒli:g/ 35
 collection 11 (-tor) 40
 collectomania
 /'kɒlektə'meɪniə/ 99
 college /kɒlɪdʒ/ 39, 45
 collocation /kɒlə'keɪʃən/ 4
 colloquial /kə'ləʊkwɪəl/ 4
 colonial /kə'ləʊniəl/ 54
 colour supplement 53
 columnist /'kɒləmɪst/ 53
 comb /kəʊm/ 1, 18
 combine (-nation) 11, 52
 come, *expressions with*
 18, 37, 45, 65, 80, 89
 come to think of it 75
 comic 53
 comma /'kɒmə/ 4
 commercial /kə'mɜːʃəl/ 53
 (~ise) 8
 commit 55 (~ment) 26
 (~ted) 67
 committee 54
 common 51 (~ man) 94
 communicate
 /'kə'mju:nɪkeɪt/ 88

community college 45
 community service 55
 commuter /kə'mju:tə/ 45
 companionship
 /'kəm'pænjənʃɪp/ 11
 companionway 49
 company /'kʌmpəni/ 29
 compartment
 /'kəm'pɑːtment/ 49
 compensate /'kɒmpəseɪt/ 85
 complain /kəm'pleɪn/ (~t) 70,
 89
 completely 57
 complexion /kəm'plekʃən/ 33
 complexity /kəm'pleksɪti/ 11
 complication
 /'kɒmplɪ'keɪʃən/ 8
 compliment /'kɒmplɪmənt/ 8
 compose /kəm'pəʊz/ (~r)
 (-sition) 10, 85
 composite /'kɒmpəzɪt/ 10
 compound adjective 12
 (~ noun) 4, 34
 comprehensive
 /'kɒmprɪ'hensɪv/ 39
 compressed /kəm'prest/ 10
 compromise /'kɒmprəmaɪz/ 65
 compulsory /kəm'pʌlsəri/ 60
 computer /kəm'pjʊ:tə/ 52
 (~ise) 8
 concede /kən'siːd/ 23
 concert 42, 88 (~ hall) 45
 concession /kən'seʃən/ 23
 conclude /kən'kluːd/
 (-clution) 52, 89
 concrete /'kɒnkriːt/ 26
 condensed milk 66
 condole /kən'dəʊl/ 94
 conducive /kən'djuːsɪv/ 10
 conduct /kən'dʌkt/ /'kɒndʌkt/
 10, 18
 conduction /kən'dʌkʃən/ 10
 conductor (-tress) 10, 97
 cone /kəʊn/ 46
 conference 39
 confess /kən'fes/ 70
 confetti /kən'feti/ 16
 conflict
 /'kɒnflɪkt/ /kən'flɪkt/ 18
 confusing 68
 (-sion) /kən'fjuːʒən/ 30
 conjunction /kən'dʒʌŋʃən/ 4
 consciousness /'kɒnʃəsnəs/ 11
 consequence /'kɒnsɪkwens/
 (-ntly) 22
 conservative 67
 consider 90

considerable
 /'kən'sɪdərəbəl/ 57
 constipated /'kɒnstɪpeɪtɪd/ 48
 constituency
 /'kən'stɪtʃuənsi/ 54
 constitute /'kɒnstɪtʃuːt/ 85
 contact 1, 89
 contact lens 13
 container 66
 contemporary 45
 content /kən'tent/ (~ed)
 (~ment) 11, 68
 contents /'kɒntents/ 27
 contest /kən'test/ /'kɒntest/ 18
 continuity /kɒntɪ'njuːɪti/
 person 53
 continuous assessment 39
 contract 59
 (on the) contrary 23
 (in) contrast 23
 contribute /kən'trɪbjʊːt/ 62
 control system 52
 control tower 49
 converse 4
 convert /'kɒnvɜːt/ /kən'vɜːt/
 (-version) 10
 conviction /kən'vɪkʃən/ 67
 convince /kən'vɪns/ 9
 (-cing) 67
 cook (~er) (~ing) 8, 18, 85
 cookie /'kuki/ 93
 cool 18
 (as ~ as a cucumber) 76
 co-opt /kəʊ'ɒpt/ 18
 cop (coppers) 95
 cope /kəʊp/ 65, 86
 corpse /kɒps/ 44
 cord /kɔːd/ 18
 cordless 52
 corduroy /kɔːdə'rɔɪ/ 47
 corkscrew /'kɔːkskruː/ 36
 cosmic 95
 cosmonaut /'kɒsmənɔːt/ 16
 Costa Rican 31
 costume /'kɒstjuːm/ 27, 42
 cot 50
 cottage /'kɒtɪdʒ/ 36
 cotton 26, 47 (~ wool) 13
 couch /kaʊtʃ/ 5 (~ potato) 99
 cough /kɒf/ 18, 48, 72
 countable 4, 8
 country (~side) 44
 country-and-western 42
 coup /kuː/ 16
 courage /'kʌrɪdʒ/ 26
 courgette /kəʊ'zet/ 43
 course /kɔːs/ 41, 43

- court /kɔ:t/ 41, 44, 55
 cove /kəʊv/ 44
 cover-up 14
 crab 43, 46
 crack /kræk/ 37, 38
 crack-down 14
 crackle /'krækəl/ 17
 crafty /'kra:fti/ /'kræfti/ 34
 crash /kræʃ/ 17, 61
 crash out 83
 crash-landing 38
 crate /kreɪt/ 66
 crawl /krɔ:l/ 63
 crayfish /'kreɪfɪʃ/ 43
 creak /kri:k/ 17
 cream 48, 66
 (the) cream (of the cream) 81
 creativity 26
 creche /kreʃ/ 16
 (on/in) credit 56
 credit card 13, 56
 crew /kru:/ 29, 49
 crew-cut 33
 cricket 41
 crime /kraɪm/ (-minal) 55
 crisis /'kraɪsɪs/ 25
 crisps 71
 critic 53
 croak /krəʊk/ 73
 Croatian /krəʊ'eɪʃən/ 31
 crocodile /'krɒkədail/ 46
 crop(s) 44, 46
 cross 68
 crosroads 49
 cross-purposes, talk at 82
 crossly 70
 crossword 53
 crow /krəʊ/ 73
 crowd /kraʊd/ (~ed) 29, 45
 cruel /'kru:əl/ 34
 cruise /kru:z/ 16
 cryogenics /kraɪə'dʒenɪks/ 52
 cube /kju:b/ 51
 cucumber 43
 cue /kju:/ 41
 cuff /kʌf/ 47
 cuisine /kwɪ'zi:n/ 16
 cul de sac 16
 cumbersome /'kʌmbəsəm/ 64
 cunning /kʌnɪŋ/ 4, 34
 cup of tea 81, 85
 cupid /'kju:pɪd/ 18
 cuppa /'kʌpə/ 95
 curb /kɜ:b/ 92
 curiosity 11
 curl /kɜ:l/ (~y) 5, 33
 curly-haired 12
 currency /'kʌrənsi/ 26, 56
 current /'kʌrənt/ 44
 current affairs 53
 curry /'kʌri/ 43, 71
 curt /kɜ:t/ 34
 curtains /kɜ:tənz/ 93
 customs /'kʌstəmz/ 49, 56
 cut 2, 18, 37, 53, 92
 cut-out 12
 cut-price 12
 cutback 14
 cutlery /'kʌtləri/ 36
 cybernetics /saɪbə'netɪks/ 52
 cycle route 49
 cyclist /'saɪklɪst/ 41
 Cypriot /'sɪprɪət/ 31
 (a) dab-hand 81
 (a) dog's breakfast/dinner 81
 dachshund /'dæʃənd/ 16
 dad 7
 daft 34 (as ~ as a brush) 74
 damage /'dæmɪdʒ/ 38
 damp 32
 dance 42 (~ hall) 45
 Dane /deɪn/ (-nish) 31
 dark-skinned 33
 darling 69
 darts 27, 41
 Darwinist 67
 dash /dæʃ/ 4, 17
 data-processing 13
 date /deɪt/ 7, 19
 dawdle /dɔ:dl/ 63
 dazzle /'dæzəl/ 64
 (as) dead as a doornail 76
 dead end, come to a 80
 (as) deaf as a post 76
 deafening /'defənɪŋ/ 71
 deal /di:l/ 91
 dear (~est) 69
 death penalty 13, 55
 debt (-or) /det/ 8, 18
 decade /'dekeɪd/ 58
 deceive 86 /dɪ'si:v/
 deciduous /də'sɪdjʊəs/ 46
 decimal /'desɪməl/ 51
 decision /dɪ'sɪʒən/ 85, 89
 deck (~ chair) 49
 decrease /dɪ'kri:s/ /'di:kri:s/
 11, 18
 dedicated 67
 deduce /dɪ'dʒu:s/ 10
 deep (~en) 59
 deer /'diə/ 43
 defeat /dɪ'fi:t/ 41
 defend 55
 define /dɪ'faɪn/ 3
 defuse /dɪ'fju:z/ 38
 degree /dɪ'ɡri:/ 39, 51
 déjà-vu /deɪʒə: 'vu:/ 71
 delay /dɪ'leɪ/ 49
 delicatessen /delɪkə'tesən/ 16
 delicious /dɪ'liʃəs/ 8
 delighted /dɪ'laɪtɪd/ 68
 delta 44
 democracy /dɪ'mɒkrəsi/ 54
 denim /'denɪm/ 15, 47
 dense (-sity) 64
 dent 37
 dental floss 36
 dentist 40
 department 54
 department store 45
 departure lounge 49
 depend 90
 deport (~ation) (~ee) 10
 depose /dɪ'pəʊz/ 10
 deposit 7, 56
 depress /dɪ'pres/ 10, 87
 depressed (-sing) 48, 68
 depth /depθ/ 11, 59
 descendant /dɪ'sendənt/ 46
 desert /'dezət/ 18, 46
 desert island 49
 deserted /dɪ'zɜ:tɪd/ 45
 design /dɪ'zeɪn/ 42 (~er) 40
 desire /dɪ'zaɪə/ 69
 desperately 70
 despise /dɪ'spaɪz/ 35
 dessert /dɪ'zɜ:t/ 43
 destatisation
 /dɪ:steɪtaɪ'zeɪʃən/ 99
 destroy /dɪ'strɔɪ/ 57, 87
 destruction 44
 detached /dɪ'tætʃt/ 36
 detective 55, 97 (~ story) 53
 determination 26
 determined 3, 34
 detest 69
 develop 87
 devoted 69
 diagnosis /daɪəg'nəʊsɪs/ 48
 diagonal /daɪ'æɡənəl/ 51
 dialect /'daɪəlekt/ 31
 diameter /daɪ'æmɪtə/ 51
 diaper /'daɪpə/ 93
 diarrhoea /daɪə'ri:ə/ 48
 dickhead /'dɪked/ 95
 dictate (-tator) (-tatorial) 54
 dictatorship 54
 die /daɪ/ 48
 difficult (~y) 25, 65
 dig 94

digital /'dɪdʒɪtəl/ 3
 (~ electronics) 52
 dilemma
 /daɪ'lemə/ /dɪ'lemə/ 25
 dim 34, 61, 64
 dimension 59
 dim 61
 dinghy /'dɪŋi/ 5
 dinosaur /'daɪnəsɔ:/ 46
 diploma /dɪ'pləʊmə/ 39
 diplomat /dɪplə'mæt/ 54
 direct 2, 34 (~ion) 11, 42
 director 40
 disability allowance 56
 disagree 9
 disappear 9
 disappoint 91
 disapprove /dɪsə'pru:v/ 9
 disaster /dɪ'zɑ:stə/ 38
 disbelieve 9
 disc (~ drive) 52
 disco 45
 disconnect 9
 discontented 68
 discount /'dɪskaʊnt/ 56
 discourage 88 (~ment) 11
 discourteous /dɪs'kɜ:tɪəs/ 34
 discover (~y) 52
 discredit 9
 discreet /dɪs'kri:t/ 9
 discrepancy /dɪs'krepənsi/ 23
 discuss /'dɪskəs/ 41
 disembark 49, 87
 disgust (~ing) 69
 dish /dɪʃ/ 43
 dishonest /dɪs'ɒnɪst/ 9
 dishwasher 8
 dislike 9, 35, 69
 dislocate /'dɪsləkeɪt/ 48
 disloyal /dɪs'loɪəl/ 9
 dismiss /dɪs'mɪs/ 40
 dismount 9, 96
 disobedient 9
 disorder 30
 display 96
 disprove 9
 disqualify /dɪs'kwɒlɪfaɪ/ 9
 disrepair /dɪsrə'peə/ 30
 dissect /daɪ'sekt/ (~ion) 52
 dissimilar 9
 dissuade /dɪ'sweɪd/ 1
 distant /'dɪstənt/ 59
 district 45
 divan /dɪ'væn/ 5
 diversion /daɪ'vɜ:ʃən/ 11
 divert 10
 divide 23, 51

dividend /'dɪvɪdend/ 56
 division 51
 dizzy /'dɪzi/ 48
 do, *expressions with*
 39, 40, 49, 85, 91
 dock (~er) 49
 document /'dɒkjumənt/ 53
 documentary
 /dɒkju'mentri/ 90
 dodo /'dɒdɒ/ 16
 doe /dəʊ/ 19
 dog (~ged) 73
 dogmatic /dɒg'mætɪk/ 67
 dole /dəʊl/ 56
 dolphin /'dɒlfɪn/ 46
 dome /dəʊm/ 18
 domesticated 46
 dominoes /'dɒmɪnəʊz/ 27
 donate /dəʊ'neɪt/ 62 (-tion) 8
 done to a turn 43
 dope /dəʊp/ 95
 dosh /dɒʃ/ 95
 double 50
 doubt /daʊt/ 18, 67
 dough /dəʊ/ 19, 95
 doughnuts /'dəʊnʌts/ 95
 dove /dəʊ/ 46
 Dow Jones index
 /dəʊ'dʒəʊnz/ 56
 down 79
 down and out 74, 77
 down in the dumps 74, 79
 down with 19
 down-to-earth 34
 downpour 32
 downy /'daʊni/ 64
 dozens of 57
 dram 42, 53, 92, 94
 drapes /dreɪps/ 93
 draughts /draʊfts/ 19, 27
 draw /drɔ:/ 19, 56
 drawback 14
 dread /dred/ 69
 dreadful 8
 dreadlocks 94
 dream 65
 dreich /draɪk/ (Scots /dri:x/) 94
 dress 47
 dresser 3
 dressing-gown 47
 dressmaker 40, 97
 drift 63
 drink (~er) (~able) 7, 8, 28, 95
 drinks like a fish 76
 drip-dry 12
 drive 2, 49, 63, 92
 drive a hard bargain 83

drive-in 12
 drizzle /'drɪzəl/ 17, 32
 drop 57
 drop a clanger 74
 (a) drop in the ocean 74
 dropout 14
 drought /draʊt/ 32, 38
 drugs 55, 95
 drum 19
 drunk 95 (as ~ as a lord) 76
 drunken driving 55
 (as) dry as a bone 76
 dual carriageway 49
 duck (~ling) 73
 due to 22
 dukedom /'dʒu:kdəm/ 11
 dull /dʌl/ 64
 dumb /dʌm/ 18, 34
 dungarees /dʌŋgə'ri:z/ 27
 dust-proof 12
 duster /'dʌstə/ 26
 dustpan /'dʌspæn/ 36
 Dutch /dʌtʃ/ 31
 duty-free 12, 49
 duvet /'du:vet/ 16
 eagerly 70
 eagle /'i:ɡəl/ 46
 earache /'ɪəreɪk/ 48
 earldom /'ɜ:ldəm/ 11
 earlier on 20
 early retirement 40
 earn a living 40
 earthquake /'ɜ:θkweɪk/ 38
 easel /'i:zəl/ 16
 (as) easy as falling off a log 76
 easy-going 12, 34
 eat like a horse 76
 eccentric /ɪk'sentɪk/ 34, 67
 eco-friendly 99
 economy /ɪ'kɒnəmi/ 44
 (-mics) 27 (-mist) 40
 (-mical) 34
 ecstasy /'ekstəsi/ (-tatic) 68
 Ecuadorian /ekwə'dɔ:riən/ 31
 edgeways /'edʒweɪz/ 82
 edible /'edɪbəl/ 8
 edit (~or) (~orial) 2, 42, 53
 edition /ɪ'dɪʃən/ 42
 educate (-tion) 5, 10, 39, 40
 efficient /ɪ'fɪʃənt/ 9
 effort 85
 eggplant 43, 93
 egotistical /ɪ:gə'tɪstɪkəl/ 12
 Egyptian /ɪ:'dʒɪpɪən/ 31
 eightish /'eɪtɪʃ/ 8
 elapse /ɪ'læps/ 58

- elbow /'elbəʊ/ 37
 elderly 49
 elders 35
 elect (-ion) (-ive) (-or) 54
 electrician /ɪlek'trɪʃən/ 40
 elegant /'eləɡənt/ 33, 45, 47
 elephant 29, 46
 elevator /'eləveɪtə/ 93
 elite /ɪ'li:t/ 16
 elm /elm/ 46
 elongated /i:lɒŋɡeɪtɪd/ 46
 embargo /ɪm'bɑ:gəʊ/ 16
 embassy 54
 emergency /ɪ'mɜ:dʒənsi/ 30
 employ (~able) (~ee) (~er) (~ment) 6, 11, 86
 empty (-tiness) 11
 emu 46
 encapsulate /ɪn'kæpsjuleɪt/ 45
 endangered species 46
 endure /ɪn'dʒʊə/ 89
 enemy 5
 energy 26
 energy-rich 46
 engine (~ driver) (~ room) 49, 93
 engineer (-ing) 40, 52, 93
 enjoy /ɪn'dʒɔɪ/ 2, 45, 69 (~ment) 8
 enough on one's plate 74
 ensue /ɪn'sju:/ 22
 entertainment /entə'teɪnmənt/ 11
 enthusiasm /ɪn'θu:zɪæzəm/ (-stic) 26, 68
 envy /'envi/ 11 (-vious) 34
 environment /ɪn'vaɪrəmənt/ 44
 epidemic /epə'demɪk/ 38
 equal /'i:kwəl/ (~ity) 11, 51 (~ly) 24
 equipment 26, 30
 era /'ɪərə/ 58
 eraser /ɪ'reɪzə/ 93
 erupt /ɪ'rʌpt/ (~ion) 38
 Esso 98
 establish /ɪ'stæblɪʃ/ 88
 estate 62 (~ agent) 45 (~ car) 49
 estuary /'estʃəri/ 44
 eternal 58
 ethnic /'eθnɪk/ 31
 European 31
 evaluation /ɪvælju'eɪʃən/ 25
 Eve-teaser 94
 even number 51
 even-tempered 34
 evening class 29, 45
 evergreen 46
 every now and then 75
 evidence /'eɪdəns/ 55
 evil-smelling 71
 ex- 9, 35
 exam 98
 examine 48, 90
 excellent 2
 excessive 57
 excise duties /'eksəɪz/ 56
 exciting (-tement) (-ted) (-tedly) 8, 11, 68, 70
 exclamation mark 3
 exclude /ɪks'klu:d/ 46
 excommunicate 9
 excursion /ɪk'skɜ:ʃən/ 50
 excuse /ɪk'skju:s/ 85
 executive /ɪg'sekjətɪv/ 40
 exempt /ɪg'zempt/ 60
 exhale /eks'heɪl/ 9
 exhausted /ɪg'zɔ:stɪd/ 12 (-tion) 48
 exhibit /ɪg'zɪbɪt/ (~ion) 42, 45
 existence /ɪg'zɪstəns/ 89
 expand (~nse) 59
 expelled 2
 experience 26, 89
 experiment, 52
 explode /ɪk'spləʊd/ (-osion) 38
 explorer 26
 export /'ekspɔ:t/ /ɪk'spɔ:t/ 3, 10
 expose 10
 express 9, 10, 49 (~ion) 10
 extend 59
 extinct /ɪk'stɪŋkt/ 46
 extinguish /ɪk'stɪŋɡwɪʃ/ 88
 extort /ɪk'stɔ:t/ 9
 extract 9
 extravagant /ɪk'strævəɡənt/ 4, 34
 extremely 57
 extroverted /'ekstrəvɜ:tɪd/ 10, 34
 eye to eye 35
 eyeballs 95
 eyes in the back of one's head 78
 eyes like a hawk 76, 78
 fab /fæb/ 95
 face 85
 (a) face as long as a fiddle 79
 fact 25, 26
 fail /feɪl/ 39, 65, 87
 faint /feɪnt/ 48
 fair /feə/ 19, 33
 fairly 57
 faith /feɪθ/ 11
 fall, *expressions with* 35, 37, 69
 fall 93
 fallout /'fɔ:laut/ 14
 falter /'fɒltə/ 65
 familiarity /fə'mɪli'ærɪti/ 11
 family 46 (~ planning) 13
 famine /'fæmɪn/ 38
 fanatical /fə'nætɪkəl/ 67
 fancy /'fænsi/ 7, 35, 69
 far (~away) 59
 far-fetched 12
 fare /feə/ 19, 56
 farewell 7
 farmer 40, 97
 fascinate /'fæsɪneɪt/ 69
 fashion /'fæʃən/ 53, 89 (~able) 47
 fast 37, 63 (a ~ worker) 78
 fasten /fɑ:sən/ 18, 85
 fats 46
 fatty /'fæti/ 43
 fatwa /'fætɹwə/ 99
 faucet /'fɔ:sət/ 93
 favour /'feɪvə/ 91
 fax 52, 98 (~able) 99
 faze /feɪz/ 19
 fear /fɪə/ 11
 feature /'fi:tʃə/ 53
 fed up 12, 68
 fee 56
 feedback 14
 feel, *expressions with* 64, 67, 71, 79
 feeling 68, 88
 felicitate /fə'lɪsɪteɪt/ 94
 fella /'felə/ 95
 female 46
 ferry /'feri/ 49
 fertile /'fɜ:taɪl/ 46 (~lise)
 fever /'fi:və/ 48
 fiancé(e) /fɪ'ɒnseɪ/ 35, 97
 fiasco /fi'æskəʊ/ 16
 fiddle /'fɪdəl/ 4
 fiend /fi:nd/ 18 (~ish) 45
 fight like cat and dog 80
 Fijian /fɪ'dʒiən/ 31
 file /faɪl/ 88
 filing cabinet 40
 film 2, 26, 29
 filthy /'fɪlθi/ 45
 finally 100
 finance /'faɪnæns/ 56
 find 40, 87, 89
 fine art 42

- fine /faɪn/ 55, 96, 100
 finger 71 (a ~ in every pie) 83
 Finn 31
 fir tree 29, 46
 fire /fɪə/ 40
 fire-ball 38
 fire-proof 12
 firefighter 40, 97
 fireman /'fɪəmən/ 97
 firm 67
 first (~ly) 100
 first-born 12
 first-class 12
 first-hand 12
 first-rate 81
 first and foremost 77
 first impression 33
 first of all 100
 fish /fɪʃ/ 28, 46
 fish finger 43
 fisherman 97
 fishing 44 (~boat) 49
 fit 30, 47 (as ~ as a fiddle) 79
 five finger discount 95
 fix, *expressions with*
 80, 88, 95
 (in a) fix 74, 80
 fjord /'fi:jɔ:d/ 16
 flash /flæʃ/ 30, 52, 61
 flat 7, 93, 98
 (as ~ as a pancake) 76
 flat-footed 12
 flatmate /'flætmeɪt/ 35
 flaw /flɔ:/ 52
 fleetfeet /'fli:tfeɪt/ 94
 Flemish /'flemɪʃ/ 31
 flew /flu:/ 19
 flexi-time /'fleksɪtaɪm/ 40
 flexible /'fleksɪbəl/ (-bility) 8
 flicker /'flɪkə/ 61
 flight /flaɪt/ 49
 flock 29
 floe /fləʊ/ 16, 19
 flogging /'flɒgɪŋ/ 55
 flood /flʌd/ 32, 37, 38
 floppy disc /'flɒpi/ 52
 flour /'flaʊə/ 26
 flow /fləʊ/ 19, 63
 flower /'flaʊə/ 46, 66, 89
 (~y) 47
 flowing /'fləʊɪŋ/ 46
 flu /flu:/ 19, 48
 fluent /'flu:ənt/ 3
 flutter /'flʌtə/ 63, 73
 flux /flʌks/ 30
 fly 49, 73
 fly in the face of 74
 fly off the handle 74
 flying saucer 71
 foal /fəʊl/ 73
 foe /fəʊ/ 5
 fog (~gy) 32
 fold /fəʊld/ 65
 following 20
 fond /fɒnd/ 69
 food 2, 26, 66
 food poisoning 13
 food processor 36, 52
 (-sing) 13
 fool-proof 12
 (a) fool's errand 74
 foolish /'fu:lɪʃ/ 34 (~ness) 11
 foot the bill 83
 foot 2, 44
 football player/pitch/match 41,
 45, 88
 footballer 41
 footlights 13
 footpath 44
 Footsie /'futsi/ 56
 for 67
 for all that 23
 for example/instance 100
 for the time being 58
 force /fɔ:s/ 60
 forceps /fɔ:sɛps/ 40
 forehead /fɔ:hed/ 46
 foreign correspondent 53
 forest /'fɒrɪst/ (~ed) 44
 forge /fɔ:dʒ/ (~r) (~ry) 55
 forgetful (~ness) 8, 12
 forgivable /fə'gɪvəbəl/ 8
 form 85
 format 53
 formation 52
 formerly /'fɔ:məli/ 20
 formula /'fɔ:mjələ/ 51
 fortitude /'fɔ:tɪtju:d/ 11
 fortune /'fɔ:tju:n/ 89
 foundations /faʊn'deɪʃənz/ 27
 fraction /'frækʃən/ 51
 fragrant /'freɪgrənt/ 71
 frank 34
 frankfurter 16
 fraternity /frə'tɜ:nɪti/ 11
 freckle /'frekəl/ 11, 33
 freebie /'fri:bi:/ 95
 freedom 11, 54 (~fighter) 4
 freeway /'fri:weɪ/ 93
 freezing 68
 freight train /freɪt/ 49
 French /frentʃ/ 31, 98
 french fries 93
 (as) fresh as a daisy 76
 freshen up 83
 fridge /frɪdʒ/ 7, 98
 friend /frend/ 7, 18, 35
 (~ship) 8, 11
 frighten the life out of sb 79
 frog 46, 73
 frost 32
 frown /fraʊn/ 72
 fruit (~ salad/ juice) 43, 66
 frustrated /frʌs'treɪtɪd/
 (-ting) (-tion) 68
 fry /fraɪ/ 43
 fudge cake 43
 fuel /fjuəl/ 95
 fulfil /fʊl'fɪl/
 (~ling) (~ment) 65
 full of oneself 34
 full stop 4
 function /'fʌŋkʃən/ 52
 funnel /'fʌnəl/ 49
 furious /'fju:riəs/ 8, 68, 70
 furniture /'fɜ:nɪtʃə/ 2, 3, 26, 30
 furry /'fɜ:ri/ 64
 further /'fɜ:ðə/ 39
 further to/furthermore 24
 fury /'fju:ri/ 11, 68, 70
 fuselage /'fju:zələ:ʒ/ 49
 fuss 85
 futon /'fu:tən/ 16
 fuzz /fʌz/ 95
 gale /geɪl/ (~ warning) 32
 gallery 45, 49
 gallop /'gæləp/ 73
 game show 53
 gang 29
 gangplank 49
 gap
 garage /'gærə:dʒ/
 /'gærɪdʒ/ 49, 93
 garden 66, 93 (~ing) 85
 (~ centre) 45
 gargle /'gɑ:gəl/ 17
 garlic /'gɑ:lk/ 43
 garment 26
 gas 26
 gash /gæʃ/ 17
 gasoline /'gæsəli:n/ 93
 gateau /'gætəʊ/ 16, 43
 gauze /gɔ:z/ 15
 Gawd forbids
 /'gɔ:d fə'brɪdz/ 95
 gaze /geɪz/ 71
 gears /'gɪəz/ 49
 gems /dʒems/ 92
 general 97
 generate /'dʒenəreɪt/ 22

- fine /faɪn/ 55, 96, 100
 finger 71 (a ~ in every pie) 83
 Finn 31
 fir tree 29, 46
 fire /fɪə/ 40
 fire-ball 38
 fire-proof 12
 firefighter 40, 97
 fireman /'fɪəmən/ 97
 firm 67
 first (~ly) 100
 first-born 12
 first-class 12
 first-hand 12
 first-rate 81
 first and foremost 77
 first impression 33
 first of all 100
 fish /fɪʃ/ 28, 46
 fish finger 43
 fisherman 97
 fishing 44 (~boat) 49
 fit 30, 47 (as ~ as a fiddle) 79
 five finger discount 95
 fix, *expressions with*
 80, 88, 95
 (in a) fix 74, 80
 fjord /'fɪːjɔːd/ 16
 flash /flæʃ/ 30, 52, 61
 flat 7, 93, 98
 (as ~ as a pancake) 76
 flat-footed 12
 flatmate /'flætmeɪt/ 35
 flaw /flɔː/ 52
 fleetfoots /'fliːtfʊts/ 94
 Flemish /'flemɪʃ/ 31
 flew /fluː/ 19
 flexi-time /'fleksɪtaɪm/ 40
 flexible /'fleksɪbəl/ (-bility) 8
 flicker /'flɪkə/ 61
 flight /flaɪt/ 49
 flock 29
 floe /fləʊ/ 16, 19
 flogging /'flɒɡɪŋ/ 55
 flood /flʌd/ 32, 37, 38
 floppy disc /'flɒpi/ 52
 flour /'flaʊə/ 26
 flow /fləʊ/ 19, 63
 flower /'flaʊə/ 46, 66, 89
 (~y) 47
 flowing /'fləʊɪŋ/ 46
 flu /fluː/ 19, 48
 fluent /'fluːənt/ 3
 flutter /'flʌtə/ 63, 73
 flux /flʌks/ 30
 fly 49, 73
 fly in the face of 74
 fly off the handle 74
 flying saucer 71
 foal /fəʊl/ 73
 foe /fəʊ/ 5
 fog (~gy) 32
 fold /fəʊld/ 65
 following 20
 fond /fɒnd/ 69
 food 2, 26, 66
 food poisoning 13
 food processor 36, 52
 (-sing) 13
 fool-proof 12
 (a) fool's errand 74
 foolish /'fuːlɪʃ/ 34 (~ness) 11
 foot the bill 83
 foot 2, 44
 football player/pitch/match 41,
 45, 88
 footballer 41
 footlights 13
 footpath 44
 Footsie /'futsi/ 56
 for 67
 for all that 23
 for example/instance 100
 for the time being 58
 force /fɔːs/ 60
 forceps /fɔːseps/ 40
 forehead /fɔːhed/ 46
 foreign correspondent 53
 forest /'fɒrɪst/ (~ed) 44
 forge /fɔːdʒ/ (~r) (~ry) 55
 forgetful (~ness) 8, 12
 forgivable /fə'gɪvəbəl/ 8
 form 85
 format 53
 formation 52
 formerly /'fɔːməli/ 20
 formula /'fɔːmjələ/ 51
 fortitude /'fɔːtɪtjuːd/ 11
 fortune /'fɔːtjuːn/ 89
 foundations /faʊn'deɪʃənz/ 27
 fraction /'frækʃən/ 51
 fragrant /'freɪgrənt/ 71
 frank 34
 frankfurt 16
 fraternity /frə'tɜːnɪti/ 11
 freckle /'frekəl/ 11, 33
 freebie /'friːbi/ 95
 freedom 11, 54 (~fighter) 4
 freeway /'friːweɪ/ 93
 freezing 68
 freight train /freɪt/ 49
 French /frentʃ/ 31, 98
 french fries 93
 (as) fresh as a daisy 76
 freshen up 83
 fridge /frɪdʒ/ 7, 98
 friend /frend/ 7, 18, 35
 (~ship) 8, 11
 frighten the life out of sb 79
 frog 46, 73
 frost 32
 frown /fraʊn/ 72
 fruit (~ salad/ juice) 43, 66
 frustrated /frʌs'treɪtɪd/
 (-ting) (-tion) 68
 fry /fraɪ/ 43
 fudge cake 43
 fuel /fjuəl/ 95
 fulfil /fʊl'fɪl/
 (~ling) (~ment) 65
 full of oneself 34
 full stop 4
 function /'fʌŋkʃən/ 52
 funnel /'fʌnəl/ 49
 furious /'fjuːrɪəs/ 8, 68, 70
 furniture /fɜːnɪtʃə/ 2, 3, 26, 30
 furry /'fɜːri/ 64
 further /'fɜːðə/ 39
 further to/furthermore 24
 fury /'fjuːri/ 11, 68, 70
 fuselage /'fjuːzələːʒ/ 49
 fuss 85
 futon /'fuːtʌn/ 16
 fuzz /fʌz/ 95
 gale /geɪl/ (~ warning) 32
 gallery 45, 49
 gallop /'gæləp/ 73
 game show 53
 gang 29
 gangplank 49
 gap
 garage /'gæraːdʒ/
 /'gærɪdʒ/ 49, 93
 garden 66, 93 (~ing) 85
 (~ centre) 45
 gargle /'gɑːgəl/ 17
 garlic /'gɑːlɪk/ 43
 garment 26
 gas 26
 gash /gæʃ/ 17
 gasoline /'gæsəliːn/ 93
 gateau /'gætəʊ/ 16, 43
 gauze /gɔːz/ 15
 Gawd forbids
 /gɔːd fə'bɪdz/ 95
 gaze /geɪz/ 71
 gears /'gɪəz/ 49
 gems /dʒems/ 92
 general 97
 generate /'dʒenəreɪt/ 22

- generation gap 13
 generous 4, 34 (-osity) 11
 genetic engineering 52
 geopolitics /dʒi:əʊ'pɒlɪtiks/ 52
 Georgian /'dʒɔ:dʒən/ 45
 German 31 (~ shepherd) 93
 gesture /'dʒestʃə/ 85
 get, *expressions with* 40, 78, 79, 80, 83, 87
 get-together 87
 getaway 14
 geyser /'gi:zə/ 44
 Ghanian /gɑ:'neɪən/ 31
 ghetto /'getəʊ/ 16
 ghost /gəʊst/ 71
 gift of the gab 81
 gifted /'ɡɪftɪd/ 34
 gigantic /dʒaɪ'ɡæntɪk/ 57
 giggle /'ɡɪɡəl/ 17
 gills /ɡɪlz/ 46
 ginger /'dʒɪndʒə/ 43
 (~-haired) 33
 give, *expressions with* 2, 18, 22, 41, 42, 62, 82
 give and take 74, 77
 give or take 77
 glacier /'gleɪsɪə/ 44
 gladly 70
 glance 71
 gland 48
 glare /gleə/ 64
 glasnost /'glæznɒst/ 99
 glass 28, 66
 glasses 27
 glen 94
 glider /'ɡlaɪdə/ 49
 glimpse /ɡlɪmps/ 71
 glitter /'ɡlɪtə/ 61
 global /'ɡləʊbəl/ 38
 globocrat /'ɡləʊbəkɹæt/ 99
 gloomy /'ɡlu:mi/ 61 (-mily) 70
 glove(s) /ɡlʌvs/ 41, 47
 glow /ɡləʊ/ 61
 gluttony /'ɡlʌtəni/ 11
 gnarled /nɑ:ld/ 64
 go, *expressions with* 7, 18, 19, 40, 50, 70, 80, 85, 89, 91
 (on the) go 89
 go-ahead 92
 goal /ɡəʊl/ 41, 65
 gobsnacked /'ɡɒbsmækt/ 95
 golf /ɡɒlf/ (~er) 41
 (~ course) 45
 good 100 (as ~ as gold) 76, 78
 good head for figures 78
 good-looking 33
 good-tempered 12, 34
 goodbye 7
 goodness 8
 goods 27
 goodwill 26
 goose /gu:s/ 2
 Gorbomania /ɡɔ:bi'meɪniə/ 99
 gorge /ɡɔ:ʒ/ 44
 Gothic /'ɡɒθɪk/ 45
 government /'ɡʌvəmənt/ 54
 (~ health warning) 96
 grab 71
 grace /ɡreɪs/ (~ful) 11, 46
 grade /ɡreɪd/ 39
 graduate /'ɡrædʒuət/
 /'ɡrædʒueɪt/ 39
 grandma lane 95
 grant 39, 56
 grape /ɡreɪp/ 43
 grapefruit 43
 grasp 71
 grass roots 13
 grass 30, 95
 grate /ɡreɪt/ 19
 grateful 9, 68, 70
 grater 8, 36
 gratitude /'ɡrætɪtʃu:d/ 68, 70
 greasy /'ɡri:si/ 43
 great 2, 19, 23, 100
 (a) great deal of 57
 Greek 31
 green fingers 81
 greenhouse effect 13, 44
 greetings 7
 gregarious /ɡrə'ɡeəriəs/ 34
 grey /ɡreɪ/ 33
 grill 43
 grin 72
 grinder /'ɡraɪndə/ 8
 grizzle /'ɡrɪzəl/ 17
 groan /ɡrəʊn/ 17, 19, 70
 groovy /'ɡru:vɪ/ 95
 (on the) grounds 22
 group 29
 grow /ɡrəʊ/ 59 (~n) 19
 (~th) 11
 growl /ɡraʊl/ 17, 73
 grudge /ɡrʌdʒ/ 17
 grumble /'ɡrʌmbəl/ 17, 70
 grumpy /'ɡrʌmpi/ 17
 grunt /ɡrʌnt/ 17, 73
 guard (~'s van) /ɡɑ:d/ 49
 guerrilla /ɡə'rɪlə/ 16
 guesthouse /'gesthaʊs/ 50
 guilty /'ɡɪlti/ 55
 gulf /ɡʌlf/ 44
 gust /ɡʌst/ 30
 guy /ɡaɪ/ 4
 Guyanese /ɡaɪjə'ni:z/ 31
 gymnast /'dʒɪmnæst/ 41
 (~ics) 27
 gypsy /'dʒɪpsi/ 15
 haemorrhage /'hemərɪdʒ/ 48
 haggle /'hæɡəl/ 56
 hail /heɪl/ (~stone) 32
 hair /heə/ 5, 26, 28 (~y) 5
 hair-restorer 8
 hairdresser 40, 97
 hairy /'heəri/ 5
 hake /heɪk/ 43
 half /hɑ:f/ 18, 51
 half-witted 34
 hall /hɔ:l/ 36
 ham (~ it up/ ~ actor) 81
 hamburger 16
 Hampstead Heath 95
 hand, *expressions with* 62, 83
 hand-made 12
 handbag /'hænbæg/ 2, 47, 93
 handcuffs /'hæŋkʌfs/ 13, 27
 handful 2, 8
 handle /'hændəl/ 71
 handout 14
 hands 3
 hands-on 99
 handsome /'hænsəm/ 33
 handy 2
 hang on 100
 hang-gliding 41, 50
 hangar /'hæŋə/ 49
 happen 86, 89
 happy (-pily) (-piness) 8, 11, 68
 (as ~ as the day is long) 79
 hard 65 (as ~ as iron) 76
 (as ~ as nails) 78
 hard-hearted 12
 hard-up 12
 harem 16
 harmless 8
 harvest /'hɑ:vɪst/ 46
 hat 95
 hatch /hætʃ/ 73
 hate (~ful) 35, 69
 hatred /'heɪtrəd/ 69
 have, *expressions with* 7, 35, 40, 50, 60, 65, 67, 76, 78, 81, 83, 89, 95
 have (got) to 60
 have a butcher's 95
 hay fever 13
 haze /heɪz/ (-zy) 32
 head and shoulders above 81

head in the clouds, have one's 78
 head or tail of, can't make 82
 head over heels (in love with) 83
 head screwed on, have one's 78
 head (~teacher/~mistress/~master) 97
 head 18, 92
 head for heights, have a 78
 head like a sieve, have a 76, 78
 head, bring to a 86
 head-on 12
 headlights 95
 headline 53, 92
 headphones/headset 53
 headquarters 27
 health centre 45
 health /helθ/ 30
 heap(s) /hi:ps/ 29, 57
 hearing /'hiəriŋ/ 11, 71
 heart 2, 78, 91
 heart attack 13, 48
 heart of gold, have a 78
 heat wave 32
 (as) heavy as lead 64, 76
 hectic /'hektɪk/ 45
 hedgehog /'hedʒhɒg/ 46
 heed 38
 heel 47
 height /haɪt/ (~en) 59
 heir /eə/ (~ess) 18, 19
 helicopter 49
 hem 47
 hen 69, 73
 herbs /hɜ:bz/ 43
 herculean /hɜ:kjə'liən/ 15
 here and now 75
 here and there 77
 herring /'herɪŋ/ 43
 hi /haɪ/ 7
 hi-jacking /'haɪdʒækɪŋ/ 55
 hibernate /'haɪbəneɪt/ 1, 46
 hiccough /hɪkəp/ 18, 72
 high /haɪ/ 51, 59, 95
 high and dry 77
 high jump 41
 (in) high spirits 79
 high-heeled 12
 high-jumper 41
 high-necked 12
 higher /haɪə/ 39
 highly 60
 hike /haɪk/ 50
 hill (~ock) 44 (~y) 45
 Hindi 31

hire /haɪə/ 62, 96
 hiss 61
 historic 45
 hit 2, 92
 hit and miss 77
 hit the sack 74
 hoarse /hɔ:s/ 19
 hockey player/stick 41
 hold /həʊld/ 67
 hold one's tongue 74, 83
 hold the record 41
 hold your horses 74
 hold-up 14
 hole punch 52
 holiday(s) 2, 85, 93
 (~ camp) 50
 hollow /'hɒləʊ/ 64
 home 28
 home-made 12
 homework 26, 85
 honest /'ɒnɪst/ 18, 34
 honey /'hʌni/ 46, 66, 71
 honour /'ɒnə/ (~able) 18
 hood /hʊd/ 93
 -hood 11
 hoof /hu:f/ 46
 hooligan /'hu:lɪgən/ 15
 hoot 73
 hop 73
 hope 11 (~lessly) 70
 hopeful 8, 11 (~ly) 70
 horn 46
 horoscope /'hɒrəskəʊp/ 53
 horror /'hɒrə/ 11
 horse 19, 73 (~-racing) 41
 horse, I could eat a
 hospital 29, 48
 host /həʊst/ 29
 hostage /'hɒstɪdʒ/ 55
 hostility /hə'stɪlɪti/ 11
 hot 43, 57, 68, 71
 hot and cold 77
 hot-headed 12
 hour-glass 66
 hourly 18
 house 7, 19, 29, 36
 (~work) 85
 house-trained 73
 housing estate 45
 however 21
 hubby /'hʌbi/ 95
 huge /hju:dʒ/ 23, 57
 hum 61
 human rights/ being 13, 97
 humid /'hju:mɪd/ 32
 humorology
 /hju:mə'rɒlədʒi/ 99

humour /hju:mə/ 11
 hump 46
 hump bridge 49
 Hungarian /hʌŋ'geəriən/ 31
 hurricane /'hʌrɪkeɪn/ 32
 hurry /'hʌrɪ/ 63
 hurt 2, 48
 husband 35
 hyena /haɪ'i:nə/ 29
 hyphen /'haɪfən/ 4
 hypochondriac
 /haɪpə'kɒndrɪ:æk/ 48
 hypocritical /hɪpə'krɪtɪkəl/ 12
 hypothesis /haɪ'pɒθəsɪs/ 52

 I mean 100
 ice field /aɪs/ 44
 ice-cream 66
 ice-skating 41
 Icelandic /aɪs'lændɪk/ 31
 (the) icing on the cake 81
 idea 2, 11, 88
 ideology /aɪdɪ'ɒlədʒi/ 67
 idolise /'aɪdələɪz/ 35
 if all else fails 75
 if the worst comes to the worst 75
 if you ask me 67, 75
 igloo /'ɪɡlu:/ 16
 ill-mannered 34
 illegal /ɪ'li:ɡəl/ 9, 55
 illegible /ɪ'ledʒəbəl/ 9
 illiterate /ɪ'lɪtərət/ 9
 illusion /ɪ'lju:ʒən/ 11
 imagination 11
 immature /ɪmə'tʃʊə/ 9
 impartial /ɪm'pɑ:ʃəl/ 9
 impatient 9 (~ly) 70
 imperial /ɪm'piəriəl/ 54
 impolite /ɪmpə'laɪt/ 34
 import
 /ɪm'pɔ:t/ /'ɪmpɔ:t/ 9, 18
 impose (-sing) (-sition) 10
 impossible 60
 impress (~ion) (~ive) 10
 imprison 55
 improve 90 (~ment) 11
 in, *expressions with* 1, 7, 20,
 21, 23, 24, 33, 56, 60, 68,
 74, 79, 80,
 in addition (to) 24
 in advance 7
 in case (of) 21
 in conclusion 100
 in favour of 67
 in one's 20s/30s etc. 33
 in other words 100

- in summary 100
 in the event of 21
 in the meantime 20
 incisor /ɪn'saɪzə/ 46
 income /'ɪŋkʌm/ 9 (~tax) 13
 inconvenient /ɪŋkən'vi:niənt/
 (-nce) 9, 88
 increase /'ɪŋkri:s/ /ɪŋ'kri:s/ 18
 independence 54
 index 56
 Indian 31, 94
 indigestion /ɪndɪ'dʒestʃən/ 48
 indiscreet /ɪndɪs'kri:t/ 9
 induce /ɪn'dʒu:s/ (-ction) 10
 industrial (~ise) (~ist) 3, 8, 10
 (~ estate) 45
 industry 3
 inedible /ɪn'edɪbəl/ 9
 inefficient /ɪn'fɪʃənt/ 9
 inevitable /ɪn'evɪtəbəl/ 60
 infinitive 4
 infirm 96
 informal 4
 information 2, 26, 30
 (~ technology) 52
 informer 95
 inheritance tax 13, 56
 injection /ɪn'dʒekʃən/ 48
 injure /'ɪndʒə/ (-ry) 38
 innocent /'ɪnəsənt/ 34
 input 14
 inquiring /ɪŋ'kwɪərɪŋ/ 34
 inquisitive /ɪŋ'kwɪzɪtɪv/
 (~ness) 11, 34
 insensitive 9
 insert /'ɪnsɜ:t/ /ɪn'sɜ:t/ 9, 52
 insignificant
 /ɪnsɪɡ'nɪfɪkənt/ 57
 insist (~ent) 70
 inspect (~ion) (~or) 10, 90

 inspired /ɪn'spaɪəd/ (-ration)
 (-ring) 68
 install /ɪn'stɔ:l/ 88
 instant coffee 66
 institution /ɪnstɪ'tʃu:ʃən/ 54
 instruct /ɪn'strʌkt/ 88
 insult /'ɪnsʌlt/ /ɪn'sʌlt/ 18
 insurance /ɪn'fʊərəns/ 48
 intellectual /ɪntə'lektʃʊəl/ 67
 intelligent 7, 12, 34 (~nce) 26
 intense (~ly) (-sify) (-sity) 11
 intention /ɪn'tenʃən/ 11
 interbreed /ɪntə'bri:d/ 46
 interest (~-free) 12, 56
 interesting 18, 68
 interject /ɪntə'dʒekt/ 88

 internal 9
 intestines /ɪn'testɪnz/ 2
 into the bargain 24
 intolerant /ɪn'tɒlərənt/ 9
 intransitive /ɪn'trænsətɪv/ 4
 introduce (~r) 10, 86
 introduction (-tory) 10
 introspective
 /ɪntrə'spektɪv/ 10
 introverted
 /'ɪntrəvɜ:tɪd/ 10, 34
 intuition /ɪntʃu:'ɪʃən/ 71
 Inuit /'ɪnjuɪt/ 31
 invent (~ion) 52, 85
 inverted 10
 inverted commas 4
 invest (~ment) 11, 56
 investigate 55, 90 (-tion) 26
 involvement 8, 11
 Iranian /ɪ'reɪniən/ 31
 Iraqi /ɪ'ræki/ 31
 Irish /'aɪrɪʃ/ 31 (~ stew) 43
 iron /'aɪən/ (~ing-board) 28,
 36, 52
 irregular /ɪ'regjʊlə/ 4
 irrelevant 9
 irreplaceable /ɪrə'pleɪsəbəl/ 9
 irresponsible 9
 irreversible 9
 Israeli /ɪz'reɪli/ 31
 issue /'ɪʃu:/ 25
 itchy feet /ɪtʃɪ'fi:t/ 79
 it's all very well 23
 Italian 31
 itch /ɪtʃ/ 48
 item /'aɪtəm/ 30

 jackal /'dʒækəl/ 16
 jacuzzi /dʒə'ku:zi/ 52
 jagged /'dʒæɡɪd/ 64
 jail /dʒeɪl/ 55
 jam 37, 66, 94 (~ on it) 81
 janitor /'dʒænɪtə/ 94
 Japanese 31
 jar /dʒɑ:/ 66
 javelin /'dʒævlɪn/ 41
 jealous /'dʒeləs/ (~y) 11, 34
 jeans /dʒi:nz/ 27, 47
 jerk /dʒɜ:k/ 95
 jersey 15
 jet 49
 jewellery /'dʒu:əlri/ 66
 job 26
 job centre 45
 jockey /'dʒɒki/ 41
 jodhpurs /dʒɒdpɜ:z/ 27
 jog /'dʒɒɡ/ 41

 john 95
 joints /dʒɔɪnts/ 48
 Jordanian /dʒɔ:'deɪniən/ 31
 journal /'dʒɜ:nəl/ 53
 journalism (-list) 8, 53
 journo /'dʒɜ:nəʊ/ 94
 joystick /'dʒɔɪstɪk/ 49
 judge /dʒʌdʒ/ 55
 judgement /'dʒʌdʒmənt/ 25
 judo 16 /'dʒu:dəʊ/
 jug /dʒʌɡ/ 66
 juice 66
 July 15
 jump out of one's skin 79
 junior /'dʒu:nɪə/ 35
 junk food/ mail 13
 junta /'dʒʊntə/ 16
 jury /'dʒʊəri/ 55
 just as 20
 justice /'dʒʌstɪs/ 11

 kangaroo /kæŋɡə'ru:/ 73
 karaoke /kæri'əʊki/ 99
 karate /kə'rɑ:ti/ 16
 kayak /'kaiæk/ 16
 keen 69, 80
 keep a cool head 79
 keep one's chin up 79
 keep s.b. on the edge of their
 seat 79
 ken 94
 kerosene /'kerəsi:n/ 93
 ketch /ketʃ/ 5
 ketchup /'ketʃʌp/ 43
 key 25, 92
 keyboard 52
 kick 2
 kick off 82
 kid 7, 95 (~'s stuff) 74
 kidnap /'kɪdnæp/ (~per)
 (~ping) 55
 kidney(s) /kɪdni:z/ (~ donor) 2,
 8, 43
 kind of 100
 kind (~ness) (~-hearted) 2, 8,
 11, 12, 43
 kindergarten /'kɪndəɡɑ:tən/ 16
 king (~ly) (~dom) 1, 11
 kinship /'kɪnfɪp/ 8
 kiosk /'ki:ɒsk/ 16
 kip 7
 Kiribati /kɪrɪ'bɑ:ti/ 31
 kirk /kɜ:k/ 94
 kitten /'kɪtən/ 2, 73
 kiwi bird/fruit /'ki:wi:/ 43, 46
 kleptomaniac
 /kleptə'meɪniæk/ 69

- knee /ni:/ 18
 knickers /'nikəz/ 27
 knife /naɪf/ 18, 27
 knit /nɪt/ 18
 knob /nɒb/ 18
 knock spots off 81
 knot /nɒt/ 18
 know your onions 81
 know-all /'nəʊəl/ 78
 knowledge /'nɒlɪdʒ/ 18, 26
 Kuwaiti /ku'weɪti/ 31
- lab /læb/ 7, 98
 labour force 13
 labourer /'leɪbə/ 40
 laces /'leɪsɪz/ 47
 lack of 60
 ladder /'lædə/ 40
 ladies and gentlemen 77
 laid-back /leɪd'bæk/ 12
 lake 44
 lamb /læm/ 18, 73
 land 18, 28, 49
 landing 36
 landlady/lord 62
 landscape /'lænskeɪp/ 44
 lane 44
 larder /'lɑːdə/ 36
 large 57
 laser /'leɪzə/ 98
 lassie /'læsi/ 94
 lasso /læ'suː/ 16
 last 58
 last-minute 12
 lastly 100
 late 18, 33
 Latin (~ America) 31
 lav (~atory) 4, 95
 law /lɔː/ 55 (~yer) /'lɔː/ 40
 (~ court) 45
 (~ and order) 77
 lay /leɪ/ 73
 lay off 40
 lay one's cards on the table 80
 lay-by 14
 lay-out /'leɪaʊt/ 14
 laze /leɪz/ (-ziness) 8, 19
 lazy-bones 78
 lead /led/ /liːd/ 19
 lead to 22
 leak /liːk/ 37
 lean and lurch 95
 leaps and bounds 77
 leather /'leðə/ 26, 40, 47, 66
 leave a lot to be desired 74
 leave 2, 46, 85
 Lebanon 31
- lechery /'letʃəri/ 11
 lecture /'lektʃə/ (~r) 39
 leek /liːk/ 43
 left 62, 67
 left luggage locker 49
 left-handed 12
 left-wing 67
 legacy /'legəsi/ 89
 legal /'liːgəl/ 8
 leggings /'legɪŋz/ 27
 legislator /'ledʒɪsleɪtə/ 54
 legless /'legləs/ 95
 lemming /'lemɪŋ/ 16
 lemon juice 43
 lemonade 66
 lend 53, 56, 62
 lend s.b. a hand 2
 length /leŋθ/ (~en) (~y) 5, 11, 59
 leotard /'liːətɑːd/ 15
 leprosy /'leprəsi/ 38
 let, *expressions with* 47, 62, 80, 91
 let me see 100
 let-out 14
 lettuce /'letɪs/ 43
 level 1
 level-crossing 13
 lever /'liːvəl/ 52
 liable /'laɪəbəl/ 60
 liberty 5, 11
 library /'laɪbrəri/ (-rian) /laɪ'breəriən/ 40, 45, 53
 lick 72
 lie-in /'laɪn/ 14
 life 11
 lifespan 1
 lift 93
 light 28
 (as ~ as a feather) 64, 76
 light at the end of the tunnel 80
 light-hearted 12
 lighthouse /'laɪthaʊs/ 49
 lightning 30
 like 69, 76, 79, 80, 100
 like the look of 90
 likewise /'laɪkwaɪz/ 24
 lime /laɪm/ 43, 71
 limp /lɪmp/ 88
 line 41, 42, 93
 liner /'laɪnə/ 49
 link 92
 listen /'lɪsən/ 18, 100
 litter /'lɪtə/ 96
 live /lɪv/ /laɪv/ 19
 lively 45
- liver /'lɪvə/ 2, 43
 livid /'lɪvɪd/ 68
 (a) load of bull 80
 loads of /'ləʊdənz/ 57
 loaf /ləʊf/ 30
 loan /ləʊn/ 62
 loathe /ləʊð/ 35, 69
 lobster /'lɒbstə/ 43
 local train 49
 loch /lɒk/ (Scots /lɒx/) 94
 lock oneself out 37
 lodgings /'lɒdʒɪŋz/ 27
 loft 36
 long 59, 69 (~-haired/-legged/-sleeved) 12, 33, 47
 long-distance 12, 41, 59
 long-jump 41
 long-standing 12
 long-winded 82
 longevity /lɒn'gevəti/ 1
 loo 4, 95
 look, *expressions with* 2, 35, 40, 69, 71, 86, 90, 100
 look-out 14
 (on the) lookout 90
 looks 27
 loose /luːs/ 47
 loot /luːt/ 95
 lorry /'lɒri/ 18, 49, 93
 lose /luːz/ 5
 loss /lɒs/ 56, 85
 lost 41
 lost property office 51
 (a) lot of (bother) 26, 57
 lots of 7, 57
 loud /laʊd/ 71
 love (~r) (-ving) (~liness) 11, 18, 35, 69, 85
 low-necked 12
 low (~er) 59, 86
 loyal /'lɔɪəl/ (~ty) 9, 26
 luck 11, 30
 (as) luck would have it 75
 luggage /'lʌɡɪdʒ/ 26, 30, 93
 lump 30, 48
 lung(s) /lʌŋz/ 2, 48
 luxury goods 13
- machiavellian /mækiə'veliən/ 15
 macho /'mætʃəʊ/ 16
 mackerel /'mækrəl/ 43
 mac (~kintosh) 15
 (as) mad as a hatter 76
 madness 11
 magazine /mægə'ziːn/ 53
 magnificent 29, 45

- magnolia 15
 mail order 13
 main course 43
 maintain 67, 70
 majority /mə'dʒɔrəti/ 54
 (on the) make 74
 make, *expressions with*
 35, 40, 50, 74, 83, 85
 make a meal (out) of 74
 make or break 77
 make-up 26, 40
 malaria /mə'leəriə/ 38
 Malay /mə'leɪ/ (~sian) 31
 male /meɪl/ 46, 97
 malicious-tongued
 /mə'liʃəs/ 73
 malignant /mə'liɡnənt/ 5
 Maltese /mɒl'ti:z/ 31
 mammal /'mæməl/ 46
 mammoth 16
 man 4, 7, 97
 manage (~r) (~ress) 40, 65, 85,
 87, 91, 97
 mandatory /'mændətəri/ 60
 mane /meɪn/ 46
 mango /'mæŋɡəʊ/ 43
 manhood /'mænhud/ 8, 11
 mankind /mæn'kaɪnd/ 97
 many 57
 maple /'meɪpəl/ 46
 marginal seat 54
 mark 39
 market 45
 marmalade 16
 maroon /mə'ru:n/ 49
 marriage 35
 martyrdom /'mɑ:tədəm/ 11
 Marxism /'mɑ:ksɪzm/ 8, 67
 mask 40
 masochist /'mæsəkɪst/ 69
 mass-produced 12
 massive /'mæsɪv/ 46
 mast /məʊst/ /mæst/ 49
 match (~ box) 66
 match /mætʃ/ 47, 89
 mate /meɪt/ 7, 35
 maternity leave 40
 maths /mæθs/ 2, 27
 matter 25
 mattress /'mætrəs/ 16
 mayonnaise /meɪə'neɪz/ 43
 mayor /meə/ 54
 meagre /'mi:ɡə/ 57
 mean /mi:n/ 4, 34
 means 27, 30
 measure /'meʒə/ 48
 mechanic /mə'kænɪk/ 40, 49
 media /'mi:diə/ 53
 medication /medɪ'keɪʃən/ 48
 medicine /'medsən/ 26, 48
 meeting 87
 Melanesian /meləni:ziən/ 31
 melon /'melən/ 43
 melt /melt/ 32
 member (~ship) 8, 11, 55
 memo 98
 mention /'menʃən/ 91
 mentor /'mentɔ:/ 15
 merit 45
 metal /'metəl/ 66
 meter /'mi:tə/ 18
 metropolis /mə'trɒpəlɪs/ 45
 mew /mju:/ 2, 73
 Mexican 31
 meow /mi'əʊ/ 17, 73
 micro- 9
 microbot /'maɪkrəbɒt/ 99
 microphone /'maɪkrəfəʊn/ 40
 microwave (~ry) 9, 52, 99
 mid- 33
 middle-of-the-road 67, 78
 midge /mɪdʒ/ 29
 might /maɪt/ 19
 mild /maɪld/ 32, 43
 miles away 78
 miles better 81
 milk /mɪlk/ 2, 30, 66
 milkman/woman 97
 milko /'mɪlkəʊ/ 94
 million /'mɪljən/ 51
 mimic /'mɪmɪk/ 86
 mind you /maɪnd 'ju:/ 100
 mind 94
 mini-vegetable 99
 minister (-try) 54
 minor /'maɪnə/ 96
 minus /'maɪnəs/ 51
 minuscule /'mɪnɪskju:l/ 57
 minute /maɪ'nju:t/ 57
 (the) minute/moment 20
 miscreant /'mɪskrɪənt/ 94
 miserable (-ably) 68, 70
 miserly /'maɪzəli/ 34, 70
 misfire 65
 misinform 9
 mislay 5, 37
 mislead 9
 misogynist /mɪs'ɒdʒənɪst/ 69
 mispronounce
 /mɪsprə'naʊns/ 9
 misspell 9
 mist 32
 mistake 85
 mistranslate 9
 misty 32
 misunderstand 9
 mite /maɪt/ 19
 mitts /mɪts/ 47
 mixed up 68
 moan /məʊn/ 19
 modem /'məʊdəm/ 52
 moderate 67
 modernise 8
 Moldavian /mɒl'deɪvɪən/ 31
 molecule /'mɒləkjʊ:l/
 (-lar biology) 52
 monarchy /'mɒnəki/ 54
 money 2, 26, 56, 89, 95
 Mongolian /mɒŋ'ɡəʊliən/ 31
 monk /mʌŋk/ 97
 monoboarding 99
 monogamous /mə'nɒɡəməs/ 9
 monologue /'mɒnəlɒɡ/ 9
 monorail 9
 monosyllable 9
 monotonous /mə'nɒtənəs/ 9
 moo /mu:/ 17, 73
 moped /'məʊpəd/ 37
 moral (~ist) 67
 more-ish /'mɔ:riʃ/ 43
 moreover /mə:'rəʊvə/ 24
 mortar /'mɔ:tə/ 38
 mortgage /'mɔ:ɡɪdʒ/ 56
 mosquito /mɒs'ki:təʊ/ 16
 mother country/tongue 13, 31
 mother (~hood) 8, 11
 motion /'məʊʃən/ 7, 96
 motion lotion 95
 motive 22
 motor-racing 41
 motorway 93
 mount /maʊnt/ 45
 mountain (~eer) (~eering) 41,
 44, 50
 mouse /maʊs/ 2, 52
 moustache /məʊs'tæʃ/ 33
 mousy /'maʊsi/ 73
 mouth 44
 move 63, 92
 movie 93
 mown /məʊn/ 19
 mozzie /'mɒzi/ 94
 much 57
 (in a) muddle /'mʌdəl/ 80
 mufti /'mʌfti/ 16
 mug 66
 mug (~ger) (~ging) 55
 multi- 9
 multilingual 31
 multiplication
 /mʌltɪplɪ'keɪʃən/ 51

- mum 7, 74
 mumble /'mʌmbəl/ 17, 70
 mumps 48
 murder (~er) (~eress) 55, 97
 murmur /'mɜ:mə/ 70
 muscle /'mʌsəl/ 18
 muscular /'mʌskjələ/ 33, 46
 museum /mju:'ziəm/ 45
 mushroom /'mʌʃru:m/ 43
 music (~ college) 30, 45
 Muslim /'mʊzlim/ 67
 muslin /'mʌzlin/ 15
 mussel /'mʌsəl/ 43
 must 60
 mustard /'mʌstəd/ 43
 mutter /'mʌtə/ 70
 mystery /'mɪstri/ 25
 mythical /'mɪθɪkəl/ 46

 nab 94
 nail-clipper 8
 naive /naɪ'iv/ 34
 nap 83
 nappy /'næpi/ 93
 nark /nɑ:k/ 95
 narrow-minded 12, 34, 67
 nationhood 11
 nausea /'nɔ:ziə/ 48
 nearby 59
 nectarine 43
 (in) need (of) 60, 85
 needle /'ni:dəl/ 26
 neigh /nei/ 73
 neighbourhood 8, 11
 nerd /nɜ:d/ 95
 nervous (~ly) (~ wreck) 19, 68, 70
 nest 46
 never-ending 12
 nevertheless 23
 new-born 73
 new leaf, turn over a 91
 newmannery /nju:'mænəri/ 99
 news 26, 30, 53, 91
 newspaper 53
 next 100
 nick 95
 night club 45
 nightie /'naɪti/ 47
 Nikkei /'ni:kei/ 56
 nine-to-five 40
 no 98
 no matter 21
 noble /'nəʊbəl/ 46
 noise (-sy) (~less) 61, 71, 85
 North African 31
 nose 49

 nosh /nɒʃ/ 95
 nostalgise /nɒs'tældʒaɪz/ 99
 nostrils /'nɒstrəlz/ 46
 nosy /'nəʊzi/ 34
 not much to look at 90
 note /nəʊt/ 39
 notice 7, 71
 nought /nɔ:t/ 51
 noun /naʊn/ 3
 novel /'nɒvəl/ 42
 now 100
 now and then 75, 77
 now then 75, 100
 nuclear engineering 52
 numb /nʌm/ 18
 number 51, 57
 number one, look after 90
 numerate /'nju:mərət/ 51
 nun 97
 nurse /nɜ:s/ 26
 nutcase 81
 nutmeg /'nʌtmeg/ 43
 nutshell /'nʌtʃəl/ 82, 88

 oak /əʊk/ 46
 oar /ɔ:/ 41, 49
 obedient /ə'bi:diənt/ 9
 obese /əʊ'bi:s/ 33
 object /'ɒbdʒekt/ 4
 object /əb'dʒekt/ (~ion) 70
 obligatory /ə'blɪgətəri/ 60
 (-tion) /ə'blɪg'eɪʃən/ 65
 obliged /ə'blɪdʒd/ 60
 observe 71
 obsessive 67
 obstinate /'ɒbstɪnət/ 34
 obtain 87, 89
 ocean /'əʊʃən/ 44
 octagon /'ɒktəgən/ 51
 odd number 51
 odd 34, 67 (~ball) 78
 odds and ends 74, 77
 off-licence 66
 off-peak 12
 offence /ə'fens/ 55
 offer a job 40
 offspring /'ɒfsprɪŋ/ 7, 46
 oil /ɔɪl/ 26, 28, 42, 43, 49
 oily 43
 oink /ɔɪŋk/ 73
 ointment /'ɔɪntmənt/ 48, 66
 okay /əʊ'kei/ 100
 old-fashioned 47
 oldies /'əʊldɪz/ 94
 olive /'ɒlɪv/ 66
 ombudsman /'ɒmbədzmən/ 16

 on, expressions with 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 40, 56, 58, 74, 77, 79, 80, 81, 89, 90
 on and off 77
 on condition that 21
 on that occasion 20
 on/off button 53
 once /wʌns/ 20
 one at a time 58
 one swallow doesn't... 84
 one-off 12
 onion /'ʌnjən/ 28, 43
 only have eyes for 78
 onomatopoeia /ɒnəmətə'pi:ə/ /ɒnəmətə'pi:ə/ 4
 open 34
 open-minded 67
 open-necked/-toed 12
 opera 29, 42, 45
 operation 48, 89
 operator 8
 opinion 67, 88
 opportunity /ɒpə'tju:nɪti/ 60
 opposite 3
 oppose /ə'pəʊz/ (-sition) /ɒpə'zɪʃən/ 10, 54
 oppress (~or) (~ion) (~ive) 10
 optimist /'ɒptəmɪst/ 34, 69
 optional /'ɒpfənəl/ 60
 or rather 100
 ordeal /ɔ:'di:l/ 92
 ordinary 33
 oregano /ɒrə'gɑ:nəʊ/ 43
 organic /ɔ:'gænik/ (~ farming) 44, 52
 organism /'ɔ:gənɪzəm/ 52
 Oriental 31
 origami /ɒrɪ'gɑ:mi/ 16
 original (~ity) 2, 11, 34
 ornithologist /ɔ:nɪ'θɒlədʒɪst/ 69
 (on the) other hand 23
 ounce /aʊns/ 64
 our 18, 19
 oust /aʊst/ 92
 out and about 77
 out of sorts 74
 out of this world 81
 outcome /'aʊtkʌm/ 14, 22
 outlay /'aʊtlei/ 14
 outlet /'aʊtlət/ 14
 outlook /'aʊtlʊk/ 14
 output /'aʊtpʊt/ 14
 outrageous /aʊ'reɪdʒəs/ 8
 outset 14
 outskirts 27, 45
 outwith /aʊt'wɪð/ 94

- oval /'əʊvəl/ 51
 oven-cleaner 8
 over the moon 74, 79
 over the top 78
 overcast /'əʊvəkæst/ 32
 overcharge /əʊvə'tʃɑ:dʒ/ 9
 overcooked 43
 overcrowded (-ding) 45
 overdo /əʊvə'du:/ 9, 43
 overdraft /'əʊvədɾɑ:ft/ 56
 overdrawn /əʊvə'drɔ:n/ 56
 overeat 9
 overlook 45
 overpopulation 44
 overpriced 2
 overrun 9
 oversleep 9, 37
 overtake 49
 overtired 9
 overweight 33
 overwhelming 57
 overworked 9
 owing to 22
 owl /aʊl/ 73
 owner /'əʊnə/ (~ship) 11, 62
 ox /ɒks/ 2
 oxygen /'ɒksɪdʒən/ 51
 oyster /'ɔɪstə/ 43
 Oz /ɒz/ 94
 ozone layer /'əʊzəʊn / 44

 pace /peɪs/ 63
 pacifist /'pæsɪfɪst/ 67
 pack (~et) 29, 66
 package holiday 2, 13
 packed /pækt/ 45
 pad 94
 paddle /'pædəl/ 41
 pail /peɪl/ 19
 pain (~ful) 19, 48
 (a) pain in the neck 74, 78
 paint 66
 painting 42
 pair /peə/ 47
 Pakistani 31
 pal 7
 palaver /pə'lu:və/ 16
 pale /peɪl/ 19
 palm /pɑ:m/ 18
 pamphlet /'pæmflet/ 15
 pan 66
 Panamanian 31
 pander /'pændə/ 15
 pane /peɪn/ 19
 panti-hose /'pæntihəʊz/ 93
 pantry /'pæntɾi/ 36
 pants 93

 paper 7, 26, 28, 66
 paraffin /'pærəfɪn/ 93
 Paraguayan 31
 paralytic /pærə'litɪk/ 95
 park (~ing meter) 18, 45, 49
 parliament /'pɑ:ləmənt/ 54
 parrot 46
 parsley /'pɑ:sli/ 43
 part and parcel 77
 part-time 12
 participate /pɑ:'tɪsɪpeɪt/ 86
 partner (~ship) 8, 11, 35, 97
 pass 39, 58
 passenger (~ train) 49
 passion (~ate) (~ately) 69, 70
 passive 8
 passport 5
 past participle 4
 pastime /'pæstaim/ 86
 pat 71
 paté /'pæteɪ/ 43
 patent /'peɪtənt/ 52
 patience /'peɪʃəns/ 26
 patio /'pætiəʊ/ 16, 36
 patter 61
 pavement 93
 paw /pɔ:/ 2, 46, 71
 pay (~ee) 8, 56
 pay attention 86
 pay over the odds 83
 pay through the nose 83
 pea(s) 43, 66
 peace and quiet 77
 peach /pi:tʃ/ 43
 peacock /'pi:kɒk/ 46
 peak /pi:k/ 44
 peal /pi:l/ 19
 peanut butter 66
 peculiar /pə'kju:liə/ 34
 peddle /'pedəl/ 55
 pedestrian crossing/precinct
 13, 45
 pedigree /'pedəgri:/ 73
 peel /pi:l/ 19
 peer /piə/ 71
 pejorative /pə'dʒɔrətɪv/ 3
 pen-name 13
 penalty /'penəlti/ 96
 pencil-sharpener 8
 penguin suit 95
 penicillin /penə'sɪlɪn/ 52
 peninsula /pə'nɪnsjələ/ 44
 pension /'penʃən/ 56
 pentagon 51
 people 28
 pepper 28, 43
 per (~ annum/cent/head) 51

 perestroika /perə'strɔɪkə/ 16
 perfectionist 67
 performer 40 (-mance) 42
 performing arts 42
 perfumed /'pɜ:fju:md/ 71
 period 58
 permanent (-nce) 11, 58
 permission 8
 permit /'pɜ:mɪt/ /pə'mɪt/ 18
 permit holder 96
 person (~-hour) 97
 personal /'pɜ:sənəl/ 67
 personnel officer /pɜ:sə'nel/ 40
 perspective 10
 perspire (-ration) 72
 persuade /pə'sweɪd/ 86
 Peruvian 31
 pessimistic /pesə'mɪstɪk/ 34
 pet 69
 petal 46, 93
 petrol (~ pump/station) 26, 49
 phase /feɪz/ 19
 phenomenon 2 /fə'nɒmənən/
 philosophy /fɪ'lɒsəfi/
 (-pher) 67
 phoenix /'fi:nɪks/ 46
 phone /fəʊn/ 7, 98 (~ call) 85
 photocopier /'fəʊtəʊkɒpiə/ 52
 photograph (~er) (~ically) (~y)
 1, 8, 18
 phrase /freɪz/ 3
 physician /fɪ'zɪʃən/ 52
 physics /'fɪzɪks/
 (-cist) /'fɪzɪsɪst/ 2, 8, 27, 52
 physiotherapist
 /fɪzɪəʊ'therəpɪst/ 40
 pianist /'piənɪst/ 8
 pick 46
 pick and choose 77
 pick holes in 81
 pick up 53
 pickpocket (~ing) 55
 picture 88
 picturesque /pɪktʃə'resk/ 45
 pie in the sky 74
 piece /pi:s/ 30
 pig(s) 29, 43, 95 (~let) 73
 pig-headed 4, 12, 34
 pig in a poke, buy a 83
 pigeon /'pi:dʒɪn/ 46
 pile /paɪl/ 29
 pillock /'pɪlək/ 95
 pillow /'pɪləʊ/ 50
 pills 48
 pilot /'paɪlət/ 2, 49
 pin-striped 47
 pin-up 14

- pincers /'pɪnsəz/ 27
 pine /paɪn/ 46
 pineapple 71
 pissed /pɪst/ 95
 piste /piːst/ 41
 place /pleɪs/ 7, 19
 plaice /pleɪs/ 19, 43
 plain /pleɪn/ 33, 44, 47
 plane /pleɪn/ 29, 98
 plant 28, 46 (~ holder) 8
 planting 44
 plaster 48
 plastic 26, 66
 platonic /plə'tɒnɪk/ 15
 play 29
 plea /pliː/ 55, 92
 (as) pleased as Punch 79
 pledge /pledʒ/ 92
 plenty (of) 45, 57
 pliers /'plaɪəz/ 27
 plod (~der) 63
 plonk (~er) 95
 plough /plau/ 18, 40
 ploy /plɔɪ/ 92
 plug /plʌg/ 36
 plum /plʌm/ 43
 plumber /'plʌmə/ 40
 plump /plʌmp/ 33
 plus 24, 51
 pneumatic /njʊ'mætik/ 18
 pneumonia /njʊ'məʊniə/ 48
 pocket money 13
 poetry /'pəʊətri/ 42 (-tess) 97
 point 25, 41, 51, 85
 point of view 67
 poke one's nose in (to) 74
 polar bear 73
 pole-vault (~er) 41
 poles apart 23
 police 95 (~man/woman/
 officer) 40, 97 (~ station) 45
 policy /'pɒlɪsi/ 28, 54
 polish /'pɒlɪʃ/ 26 (~ed) 6
 politics /'pɒlətɪks/ (-tician)
 (-tical) /pə'lɪtɪkəl/
 (political party/issue) 54
 polka-dotted /'pɒlkdɒtɪd/ 47
 poll /pəʊl/ 92
 pollen /'pɒlən/ 46
 pollution /pə'luːʃən/ 8, 44, 45
 polo-necked /pəʊlə'nekt/ 12
 polytechnic /pɒli'teknik/ 39
 pond 44
 poodle /'puːdəl/ 16
 pool /puːl/ 41
 poplar /'pɒplə/ 46
 popular /'pɒpjələ/ (~ity) 11,
 51
 population 44
 porch /pɔːtʃ/ 36
 pork chop 43
 port 49
 port-hole 49
 porter 10, 49
 portion /'pɔːʃən/ 43
 pose /pəʊz/ 10
 position /pə'zɪʃən/ 25
 possessions /pə'zefənz/ 62
 possible (-bility) 60
 post- 9
 postie /'pəʊsti/ 97
 postman/postwoman 66, 97
 postpone /pə'spəʊn/ 10, 88
 postwar 9
 pot 66
 potato 28, 43
 (~ chips/crisps) 93
 pottery 66
 pound /paʊnd/ 64
 pour /pɔː/ 18
 pour cold water on 80
 pour down 32
 pour oil on troubled waters 80
 pour one's heart out to s.b. 80
 pouring with rain 80
 poverty /'pɒvəti/ 30
 power 89 (~ cut) 37
 (~ point) 36
 practice (-tise) /'præktɪs/ 19
 pram /præm/ 93
 prat 95
 prawn /prɔːn/ (~ cocktail) 43
 pray /preɪ/ 19
 pre-schooler 99
 prefix /'priːfiks/ 4
 pregnant 48
 prejudiced /'predʒədɪst/ 45
 premises /'premɪsɪz/ 27
 prepare 85, 87
 preposition 4
 prerequisite /priː'rekwɪzɪt/ 21
 preschool 39
 prescribe /prə'skraɪb/ 48
 present /'prezənt/ /prə'zent/
 18, 62, 88
 preside /prə'zaɪd/ 54
 president /'prezɪdənt/ (~ial)
 (-dency) 54
 press 52, 53, 71
 press agency 45
 press-up 14
 pressure /'preʃə/ 10
 pretend 88
 previously 20
 prey /preɪ/ 19
 price (~less) (~y) (~ tag) 2, 56,
 88
 prickly /'prɪkli/ 46, 64
 pride /praɪd/ 11
 priest /priːst/ 40
 priesthood /'priːsthʊd/ 8
 prim and proper 77
 primary 39
 Prime Minister 54
 prime number 51
 principle /'prɪnsəpəl/ 11
 print 53
 printer 52
 printout /'prɪntaʊt/ 14
 prior to 20
 prison 55, 95
 pro-government 9
 pro- 9
 probable (-bly) 60
 probation /prə'beɪʃən/ 55
 probe /prəʊb/ 92
 problem 25 (~free) 12
 proceeds /'prəʊsiːdz/ 27
 produce /prə'dʒuːs/ /'prɒdʒuːs/
 (~r) 3, 10
 product /'prɒdʌkt/
 (~ion) (~tive) (~tivity) 3, 10,
 11
 professor 39
 profit 56, 85
 programme 53
 progress 18, 26
 prohibited /prə'hɪbɪtɪd/ 96
 projector /prə'dʒektə/ 8, 40
 promote /prə'məʊt/ 40
 prompt /prɒmpt/ 22
 pronoun /'prəʊnaʊn/ 4
 proof 55
 property 62
 propose /prə'pəʊz/ (-sal) 88
 proprietor /prə'praɪətə/ 62
 prosecute /'prɒsəkjʊt/ 96
 prospect 10
 prosperity 11
 protest /'prəʊtest/ /prə'test/ 18
 proudly /'praʊdli/ 70
 provide 62
 provided/providing (that) 21
 provisional /prə'vɪʒənəl/ 58
 provoke (~d) 22
 prudence /'pruːdəns/ 11
 psalm /sɑːm/ 18
 pseudo- /'sjuːdəʊ/ /'suːdəʊ/ 9
 pseudonym /'sjuːdənɪm/
 /'suːdənɪm/ 18

- psychiatry /saɪ'kaɪətri/ (-tric)
 (-trist) 18
 psychic /'saɪkɪk/ 18
 psychology /saɪ'kɒlədʒi/
 (-gical) (-gist) 18
 pub (~lic house) 98
 public relations officer 40
 publish /'pʌblɪʃ/ (~er) (~ing)
 42, 53, 89
 pudding /'puːdɪŋ/ 43
 puddle /'pʌdəl/ 44
 puff /pʌf/ 30
 pull /pʊl/ 52
 pull a fast one 74
 pull it off 65
 punctuation /pʌŋktʃu:'eɪʃən/ 4
 puncture /'pʌŋktʃə/ 93
 punish /'pʌnɪʃ/ (~ment) 55
 puppy 73
 purchase /'pɜ:ʃəs/ 7, 56, 96
 purify /'pjʊrɪfaɪ/ 8
 purpose /'pɜ:pəs/ 22
 purr /pɜ:/ 2, 73
 purse /pɜ:s/ 93
 purser /'pɜ:sə/ 49
 pushy /'puʃi/ 34
 put, *expressions with* 2, 3, 18,
 82, 88
 pyjamas /pə'dʒu:məz/ 27, 47
 pyramid /'pɪrəməɪd/ 51

 quack /kwæk/ 73
 quaint /kweɪnt/ 45
 quarrelsome /'kwɒrəlsəm/ 34
 quay /ki:/ 49
 question /kwɛstʃən/ 25, 48
 (~ mark) 3
 queue /kju:/ 93
 quick 63 (as ~ as a flash) 76
 quick off the mark 78
 quick-tempered 34
 quick-witted 12
 quid /kwɪd/ 7
 quiet /kwaɪət/ 71
 (as ~ as a mouse) 76
 quit /kwɪt/ 92
 quite /kwaɪt/ 57, 60, 69
 quite the opposite 23
 quiz /kwɪz/ 53

 rabies /reɪbi:z/ 38
 race /reɪs/ 33 (~ relations) 13
 racecourse /'reɪskɔ:s/ 41
 racing driver 41
 rack and ruin 77
 racket /'rækɪt/ 41, 61
 radar /'reɪdɑ:/ 98

 radical /'rædɪkəl/ 67
 radio station 45
 radish /'rædɪʃ/ 43
 radius /'reɪdiəs/ 51
 rage /reɪdʒ/ 11, 68
 rail /reɪl/ 49
 railway car/carriage 45, 93
 rain 19, 30 (~y) 32
 (~forest) 44 (~water) 66
 raise /reɪz/ 19, 86, 88
 rake /reɪk/ 36
 range /reɪndʒ/ 29
 rant and rave 77
 rap /ræp/ 94
 rape /reɪp/ 55
 rapid /'ræpɪd/ 63
 rash /ræʃ/ 48
 raspberry /'ræzbəri/ 43
 rat-race /'ræt reɪs/ 13
 rate /reɪt/ 63
 rate of exchange 56
 rather /'rɑ:ðə/ 57
 rattle /'rætəl/ 61
 ratty /'ræti/ 73
 rave reviews 42
 ray(s) /reɪz/ 19, 61
 razor /'reɪzə/ 27
 re-introduce 86
 reach /ri:tʃ/ 65, 80, 87
 react /ri'ækt/ 18, 52
 reaction /ri'ækʃən/ 25
 readable /'ri:dəbəl/ 8
 readiness /'redɪnəs/ 8
 ready-made 12
 realise /'ri:əlaɪz/ (-sable)
 (-sation) 65
 really 57
 reason 11, 22
 rebate /'ri:beɪt/ 56
 recall /rɪ'kɔ:l/ 90
 recede /rə'si:d/ 38 (-ding) 33
 receipt /rə'si:t/ 18, 56
 receive /rə'si:v/ 18, 53, 87, 89
 receptacle /rə'septɪkəl/ 66
 receptionist 26, 40
 recipe /'resɪpi/ 18
 reckon /'rekən/ 67
 recognition /rekəg'nɪʃən/ 11
 recognizable
 /rekəg'nəɪzəbəl/ 8
 record /'rekɔ:d/ /rɪ'kɔ:d/ 18,
 91
 record player/token 8, 13
 record-breaking 12
 recover /rə'kʌvə/ 87
 rectangle /'rektæŋɡəl/ 51
 recycled paper 44

 (in the) red 56, 74
 (as) red as a beetroot 76
 (a) red rag to a bull 76
 red-haired 12, 33
 reddish /'redɪʃ/ 8
 redefine 9
 reduce /rɪ'dju:s/ 10, 96
 reduction 11, 56
 redundant /rɪ'dʌndənt/ 40
 reed /ri:d/ 19
 referendum /refə'rendəm/ 54
 refrain /rə'freɪn/ 96
 refugee /refju:'dʒi:/ 38
 refund /'ri:fʌnd/ 56
 refusal /rə'fju:zəl/ 8, 40
 regal /'ri:gəl/ 1
 regional /'ri:dʒənəl/ 31
 register /'redʒɪstə/ 4
 registry office 45
 regret /rə'ɡret/ 7
 regular 4
 reimburse /ri:ɪm'bɜ:s/ 7
 rein /reɪn/ 18, 19
 reinforce /ri:ɪn'fɔ:s/ 18
 reject /rɪ'dʒekt/ /'ri:dʒekt/
 (~ion) 11, 18
 relationship 11
 relaxed /rə'læks/ 12, 34
 (~ing) 2
 release /rə'li:s/ 55
 relevant 9
 reliability 26
 reliable /rə'laɪəbəl/ 34
 religious /rə'lɪdʒəs/ 67
 reluctantly 70
 remote control 36, 53
 (~led) 12
 renovate /'renəveɪt/ 85
 rent 62
 rep 98
 repel /rɪ'pel/ 35, 69
 repellent /rɪ'pelənt/ 69
 rephrase /ri:'freɪz/ 9
 replace 9 (~ment) 8, 11
 report 10, 53, 90
 reported speech 10
 repose 10
 representation (-tative) 54
 repress 10
 reprint 18
 reptile /'reptail/ 1, 46
 republic 54
 repulsion (-sive) 69
 request /rɪ'kwest/ 7
 requirement
 /rɪ'kwəɪmənt/ 11, 21

- research /'ri:sə:tʃ/ 26
 (~ worker) 40
 resemble /rɪ'zembəl/ 86
 resentful/resentment 11
 reserve /rɪ'zɜ:v/ 88
 residence /'rezɪdəns/ 7
 residential /rezi'denʃəl/ 45
 resit /rɪ'sɪt/ 39
 resolution /rezə'lu:ʃən/ 25
 respect /rɪ'spekt/ 10, 90
 response 25
 responsible 9
 rest and recreation 77
 restaurant-car 49
 result /rɪ'zʌlt/ 22
 retirement /rɪ'taɪəmənt/ 11
 retract 86
 retrospective
 /retrə'spektɪv/ 10
 return /rɪ'tɜ:n/ 87, 93
 retype 9
 reveal 86
 revenge /rɪ'vendʒ/ 87
 reverse /rɪ'vɜ:s/ 23
 revert /rɪ'vɜ:t/ 10
 review /rɪ'vju:/ 2, 53, 91
 revision 5
 revolt /rɪ'vɒlt/ 69
 revolution (~ary) (~ise) 54
 rewind 9
 reword 4
 rewrite 9
 rheumatism /'ru:mətɪzəm/ 48
 rhyme /raɪm/ 42
 ribbon /'rɪbən/ 47
 rice /raɪs/ 26, 43
 riddle /'rɪdəl/ 92
 ride 2
 ridge /rɪdʒ/ 44
 riding 41
 right /raɪt/ 19, 100
 right-angled 51
 right-wing 67
 ring 7, 41
 rink /rɪŋk/ 41
 rip somebody off 83
 rip-off /'rɪpɒf/ 56, 83
 rise and shine 83
 rite /raɪt/ 19
 river 44
 road 44, 61, 73 (~ works) 13,
 49
 roast /rəʊst/ 43
 rob 55
 robot /'rəʊbɒt/ 52
 rock 42 (~ y) 44
 rod 41
 romance /rə'mæns/ 35
 room 50
 root 4, 46
 rosemary /'rəʊzməri/ 35
 rosy-cheeked 12
 rotate /rəʊ'teɪt/ 52
 rotation, 52
 rotten /'rɒtən/ 71
 rottweiler /'rɒtvaɪlə/ 16
 rough /rʌf/ 18, 19, 46, 64
 rough and ready 74, 77
 round the bend 78
 round trip 93
 round-faced 33
 round-neck 47
 route /ru:t/ 18
 row /rəʊ/ /rəʊ/ 19, 29
 rowing-boat /'rəʊɪŋ/ 49
 royal /rɔɪəl/ 1, 45
 rub /rʌb/ 48
 rubber /'rʌbə/ 28, 93
 rubbish /'rʌbɪʃ/ 66, 88, 93
 (~ bin) 93
 rudder /'rʌdə/ 49
 rude /ru:d/ 34
 ruff /rʌf/ 19
 rugby /'rʌɡbi/ 41
 ruined /ru:nd/ 57
 Rumanian 31
 rumble /'rʌmbəl/ 30, 61, 72
 rump steak 43
 run, *expressions with*
 49, 54, 58, 63, 81, 91
 run out 37, 49, 91
 run-down 12, 45
 runway 49
 rural /'ru:rəl/ 3
 rushing 63
 Russian 31
 rustle /'rʌsəl/ 17, 61
 sack 66 (get the ~) 40
 sadistic /sə'dɪstɪk/ 34
 sadly 70
 sadness 8
 safe and sound 77
 safety helmet /'seɪfti/ 41
 safety officer 40
 sail /seɪl/ 19, 49, 63
 (~ling boat) 5
 sailor 8, 49
 salad dressing 43
 salary /'sæləri/ 56
 sales assistant 40
 salmon /'sæmən/ 18, 43
 salt (~y) 28, 43, 71
 salt water 46
 sand 18, 66 (~y) 44
 sardine(s) 29, 43
 satellite dish /'sætələɪt/ 53
 satin /'sætɪn/ 15
 satisfaction (-torily) (-tory) 11
 satisfy (-fied) 11
 sauce /sɔ:s/ 28
 sauna /'səʊnə/ 16
 sauté /'səuteɪ/ 16
 savings account 56
 savoury /'seɪvəri/ 43
 saxophone /'sæksəfəʊn/ 15
 scales /skeɪlz/ 27, 46, 48
 scalpel /'skælpəl/ 40, 48
 scandal 53
 Scandanavia 31
 scarcity /'skeəsɪti/ 8
 scared out of one's wits 79
 scared stiff 79
 scene /si:n/ 19, 42, 53
 scenery /'si:nəri/ 42
 scent /sent/ 19 (~ed) 71
 school /sku:l/ 2, 39, 45
 (~kid) 29
 schoolmaster/schoolmistress
 97
 science /saɪəns/ 18, 52
 scientist 40
 scissors /'sɪzəz/ 1, 13, 27
 scorching /'skɔ:tʃɪŋ/ 32
 score /skɔ:/ 41
 Scotch tape 93
 Scottish 94
 scratch /skrætʃ/ 2
 scream /skri:m/ 70
 screech /skri:tʃ/ 61
 screw /skru:/ 95
 screwdriver /'skru:draɪvə/ 2
 script /skript/ 40
 scruffy /'skrʌfi/ 33, 47
 sculptor /'skʌlptə/
 (-ture) /'skʌlptʃə/ 42
 sea 44, 49
 seafood 43
 seagull /'si:gəl/ 46
 seal /si:l/ 46, 90
 season /'si:zən/ 43
 second-class 12
 secondary /'sekəndri/ 39
 secretary /'sekrətri/ 40, 97
 secure /sə'kjuə/ 11, 65
 security /sə'kjʊrɪti/ 11
 (~ officer) 40
 see, *expressions with*
 35, 71, 91, 100
 seen better days 74
 seething /'si:ðɪŋ/ 68

- self- 12
 self-assured 12, 34
 self-catering 50
 self-centred 12, 34
 self-confident 12, 34
 self-employed 2, 6
 self-important 34
 self-indulgent 12, 34
 sellotape /'seləteɪp/ 26, 93
 semester /sə'mestə/ 93
 semi- 9, 36
 semi-colon /semi'kəʊlən/ 4
 seminar /'seminɑː/ 16
 sender 8
 senior 35
 sensation 53
 sense 11
 sensible 34
 sensitive 9, 34 (-vity) 11
 sent 19
 sentence 4, 55
 sentiment (~al) (~alise) (~ally) 11, 45
 Serbian 31
 serial /'si:riəl/ 53
 series /'si:ri:z/ 27, 53
 serve 50
 service 50 (~ station) 49
 set, *expressions with* 1, 2, 29, 42, 55, 88
 set-up 14
 setback 14
 settee 5
 settle 32
 shabby /'ʃæbi/ 45
 shade /ʃeɪd/ 1, 28, 64
 shake 72
 shake-up 14
 shake in one's shoes 79
 shallot /ʃə'lɒt/ 43
 shallow /'ʃæləʊ/ 44, 59
 shape /ʃeɪp/ 51
 shares /ʃeəz/ 56
 shark /ʃɑ:k/ 46
 shawl /ʃɔ:l/ 16
 shears /ʃiəz/ 27
 shed 36
 sheep 29, 43, 73
 sheepish 73
 shell 38 (~ed) 1
 shepherd /'ʃepəd/ 97
 shepherdess /ʃepəd'es/ 97
 sherbet /'ʃɜ:bət/ 16
 shift-work /'ʃɪftwɜ:k/ 40
 shin-pads 41
 shine /ʃaɪn/ 61 (-ny) 64
 shipmate 35
 shiver /'ʃɪvə/ 72 (~y) 48
 shoal /'ʃəʊl/ 29
 shock 11
 shocking-pink 12
 shoe horn 13
 shook /ʃʊk/ 38
 shoot /ʃu:t/ 2, 41, 53
 shop-lifter (~lifting) 55, 96
 shopping 66, 85 (~ centre) 45
 (-per) 8
 shore /ʃɔ:/ 44
 short (~en) 59 (~age) 60
 short cut 59
 short story 42
 short-sighted 12
 shorts 27, 41, 47
 (a) shot in the dark 74
 shout /ʃaʊt/ 18, 70
 show /ʃəʊ/ 42, 53
 show, it all goes to 74
 shower /'ʃaʊə/ 30, 32, 50
 shrewd /'ʃru:d/ 4, 34
 shriek /'fri:k/ 70
 shrimp /'ʃrɪmp/ 43
 shrink /'ʃrɪŋk/ 59
 shuttlecock /'ʃʌtləʊk/ 41
 shyly /'ʃaɪli/ 70
 Siamese 73
 sick and tired 68, 77
 sick 48 (~ leave) 40
 (as) sick as a dog/parrot 76
 sickie /'sɪki/ 95
 sickly 43
 sidewalk /'saɪdwɔ:k/ 93
 siesta /si:'estə/ 16
 sigh /saɪ/ 72
 sight /saɪt/ 11, 19, 71, 89
 sight-seeing 2, 50
 signal-box 49
 Sikhs /sɪ:ks/ 31
 silent 71
 silk /sɪlk/ 26, 47 (~y) 64
 silly 34
 simple /'sɪmpəl/ 34
 since then 20
 sincere /sɪn'sɪə/ 34 (~ly) 70
 singer 8, 29
 single 50, 97
 single-handed 2
 single-minded 12, 34
 singlehood 99
 sink 37
 sink or swim 77
 sit 39
 sitcom /'sɪtkɒm/ 53
 site /saɪt/ 19, 45
 sitting pretty 74
 situation /sɪtʃu'eɪʃən/ 25
 sixth sense 71
 sizeable /'saɪzəbəl/ 57
 sizzle /'sɪzəl/ 17
 skating rink 45
 ski /ski:/ 16, 41, 50
 skilled worker 40
 skin cream 66
 skinny /'skɪni/ 4
 skip 39, 73
 skipper 49
 skittles /'skɪtlz/ 41
 slalom /'slɑ:ləm/ 16
 slang /slæŋ/ 4, 95
 sleek /sli:k/ 64
 sleep like a log 76
 sleeping-car 49
 sleet 32
 sleeve 47
 slice /slaɪs/ 30
 slim 4, 33
 slim-hipped 12
 slipper(s) 27, 47
 slippery 64
 slither /'slɪðə/ 73
 sloth /sləʊθ/ 11
 slow 37
 slow lane 95
 slow off the mark 78
 slowcoach 63, 78
 slowly but surely 77
 slum /slʌm/ 45
 slush /slʌʃ/ 23
 sly /slaɪ/ 34
 small ads 53
 small talk 82
 smart /smɑ:t/ 33, 34, 47
 smash /smæʃ/ 37
 smell (~y) 11, 71
 smog /smɒg/ 32
 smoke /sməʊk/ 30
 smoker 8
 smoko /'sməʊkəʊ/ 94
 smooth /smu:ð/ 64
 smuggle /'smʌgəl/ (~r) (-ling) 55
 snack 43
 snail /sneɪl/ 46
 snake /sneɪk/ 73
 snatch /snætʃ/ 71
 sneeze 72
 snifter /'snɪftə/ 95
 snobbish /'snɒbɪʃ/ 12
 snooker /'nu:kə/ 41
 snore /snɔ:/ 72
 snorkel /'snɔ:kəl/ 16
 snort 95

- snout /snaʊt/ 46
 snow /snoʊ/ 95 (~drift) 32
 (~surfing) 99 (~y) 32
 so 100
 so to speak 100
 so-called 12
 soap 26, 30
 soap opera 53
 (as) sober as a judge 76
 sociable /'səʊfəbəl/ 34
 social club 45
 social security 56
 social trends 53
 socialist 67
 socket /'sɒkɪt/ 36
 sofa 3, 5
 soft-hearted 12
 soften /'sɒfən/ 18
 solar power /'səʊlə/ 44
 soldier /'səʊldʒə/ 26
 sole /səʊl/ 19, 43, 47
 solid 64
 solution 25
 sombre /'sɒmbə/ 61
 sooner or later 77
 sophomore /'sɒfəmoː/ 39
 soprano /sə'prɑːnoʊ/ 16
 sorbet /'sɔːbeɪ/ 43
 sore throat 48
 sorry 18
 sort of 100
 sort 19
 sought /sɔːt/ 19
 soul /səʊl/ 19
 sound 61, 71, 89 (~ barrier) 13
 sound bite 13, 99
 soup 66
 sour /saʊə/ 43, 71
 source /sɔːs/ 44
 Southern African 31
 souvenir /suːvə'niə/ 45
 sow /səʊ/ /sau/ 19
 sozzled /'sɒzəld/ 95
 spacious /'speɪʃəs/ 45
 spaghetti /spə'geti/ 16, 26
 Spaniard /'spænjəd/
 Spanish 31
 spaniel /'spænjəl/ 73
 spark off 22
 sparkle /'spɑːkəl/ 61
 sparse /spɑːs/ 64
 spartan /'spɑːtən/ 15
 spatter /'spætə/ 17
 speak one's mind 82
 species /'spiːʃiːz/ 46
 spectacles /'spektəkəlz/ 27, 66
 speed 11, 63
 spell /spel/ 30, 58
 spend 2, 56, 89
 sphere /sfɪə/ 51
 spices /'spɑːsɪz/ (-cy) 43, 71
 spill 17, 37
 spinach /'spɪnɪtʃ/ 43
 spinster /'spɪnstə/ 97
 spiral /'spɑɪrəl/ 51
 spit 17
 spiteful /'spɑɪtfəl/ 8
 splash /splæʃ/ 17
 splendid 2
 split 2 (~ up) 35
 splosh /splɒʃ/ 17
 splutter /'splʌtə/ 17
 spokesman/person/woman 97
 spondulicks /spɒn'duːlɪks/ 95
 sponsorship 11
 sports car 49 (~ centre) 45
 spot 30 (~s) 48 (~ted) 47
 sprain /spreɪn/ 48
 spray 17 (~ can) 44
 spread /spred/ 38, 87
 spring to mind 74
 sprinkle /'sprɪnkəl/ 17
 sprinter 41
 spud /spʌd/ 7
 spurt /spɜːt/ 17
 sputnik /'spʌtnɪk/ 16
 square /skweə/ (~d) 51, 94
 (a) square peg in a round hole 78
 squash /skwɒʃ/ 27, 41, 45
 squid /skwɪd/ 43
 stack 29
 staff /stɑːf/ /stæf/ 29, 49
 stage /steɪdʒ/ 42
 stain /steɪn/ 37
 stairs /steəz/ 27
 stake /steɪk/ 19
 stalk /stɔːk/ 46
 stamina /'stæmɪnə/ 26
 stammer /'stæmə/ 70
 stand 54
 (can't) stand/bear 35, 69
 standardise /'stændədaɪz/
 (~d) 8
 standstill /'stænstɪl/ 45, 89
 stapler /'steɪplə/ 8, 40, 52
 star 51
 star fruit 43
 star in 2
 starboard /'stɑːbəd/ 49
 stardom /'stɑːdəm/ 11
 stare /steə/ 71
 starling /'stɑːlɪŋ/ 29
 start 37, 87
 starter 43
 starve (-vation) (-ving) 38
 state of affairs 25
 state 30, 54
 statesman/woman 54
 station manager/master 97
 stationary /'steɪʃənəri/ 7
 stay 94
 steady boy/girlfriend 35
 steak /steɪk/ 19
 steal /stiːl/ 55
 stealth /stelθ/ 11
 steam engine 19, 52
 steep /stiːp/ 44, 49
 steeple /'stiːpəl/ 45
 steering-wheel 49
 stem from 22
 stepladder 8
 steppe /step/ 16
 sterile /'sterail/ 46
 sterling /'stɜːlɪŋ/ 56
 stetson /'stetsən/ 15
 stew /stjuː/ 43
 steward/stewardess /'stjuːəd/
 /'stjuːədes/ 49, 97
 stick 41
 stiffness /'stɪfnəs/ 48
 stifling /'staɪflɪŋ/ 32
 stinking /'stɪŋkɪŋ/ 71
 stir /stɜː/ (~rer) 63
 stir fry 80
 stir yourself / things up 80
 stocky /'stɒki/ 33
 stodgy /'stɒdʒi/ 43
 stolen goods 95
 stomach ache /'stʌməkəɪk/ 48
 stone /stəʊn/ 26, 64 (~d) 95
 stool /stuːl/ 3
 stop 3, 37, 89
 store /stɔː/ 46
 store card 99
 storm 18, 32
 straight-haired 12
 streaker /'striːkə/ 63
 stream 44
 streets ahead 81
 strength /streŋθ/ (~en)
 /streŋθən/ 11
 stress 4 (~ful) 45
 stretch /stretʃ/ 59
 strife /straɪf/ 92
 strike /straɪk/ 38, 40
 string 29
 striped /straɪpt/ 47
 stroke /strəʊk/ 30, 71
 strong 11, 67
 (as ~ as an ox) 76

- strongly 11
 struck 45
 structure /'strʌktʃə/ 52
 stubborn /'stʌbən/ 34, 73
 stuck-up 12
 study 36
 stunning /'stʌnɪŋ/ 2
 stupid (~ity) 11, 34, 95
 sturdy /'stɜːdi/ 46
 stutter /'stʌtə/ 70
 style /stʌɪl/ 45
 sub-editor 9, 53
 sub-human 9
 sub-species 46
 subdivision 9
 subject /'sʌbdʒekt/ /səb'dʒekt/ 3, 18, 59
 submarine /sʌbmə'ri:n/ 9
 submit 88
 substitution /sʌbstɪ'tʃuːʃən/ 11
 subtle /'sʌtəl/ 18
 subtraction /sʌb'trækʃən/ 51
 suburb /'sʌbɜːb/ 45
 subway 9, 93
 succeed /sək'siːd/ 39, 65, 86, 87, 89
 success /sək'ses/ (~ful) 65, 85
 suck /sʌk/ 72
 Sudan 31
 suede /sweɪd/ 15, 47
 suffering /'sʌfrɪŋ/ 38
 suffix 4
 sugar 26, 66 (~y) 43
 sugar-free 12
 suggest /sə'dʒest/ 5 (~ion) 85, 88
 suit /suːt/ 47, 89
 suitcase 36
 summit /'sʌmɪt/ 44
 sun-tanned 12
 sunbathe /'sʌnbəɪð/ 50 (-bathing) 2
 sunburn 48
 sunglasses 13
 super cola 95
 superb 2
 superiority /supɪəri'ɒrəti/ 11
 supernatural 71
 supersonic 49
 supervisor 8, 40
 supply /sə'plai/ 62
 support (~er) (~ive) 10
 suppose 10 (-sing) 21
 suppress /sə'pres/ 10
 surface /'sɜːfɪs/ 64
 surgeon /'sɜːdʒən/ 26, 40, 48
 survive /sə'vaɪv/ (-vor) (-val) 11, 38
 suspect /sə'spekt/ /'sʌspekt/ 10, 18, 67
 swallow /'swɒləʊ/ 72
 swarm /swɔːm/ 29
 sway /swei/ 63
 sweatband 41
 sweater 47
 sweatshirt 41
 Swede /swɪd/ 31
 sweep something under the carpet 80
 sweet 43, 66, 71, 93
 sweet-smelling 46, 71
 sweetcorn /'swiːtkɔːn/ 43
 sweetheart /'swiːthɑːt/ 69
 swell with pride 79
 swept /swept/ 38
 swerve /swɜːv/ 49, 63
 swift /swɪft/ 63
 swim (~mer) 50, 59, 73
 swimming pool 45
 Swiss 31
 switch on 52
 swollen /'swɒləʊn/ 48
 sword /sɔːd/ 18
 swot /swɒt/ 7
 syllable /'sɪləbəl/ 4
 synonym /'sɪnɒnɪm/ 4
 syringe /sə'rɪndʒ/ 48
 ta /tɑː/ 7
 ta-ta /tə'tɑː/ 7, 95
 tablemat 36
 tablets /'tæbləts/ 48
 tabloid /'tæblɔɪd/ 53
 tadpole /'tædpəʊl/ 73
 taffeta /'tæfətə/ 16
 tail /teɪl/ 2, 46, 49
 tailback 14
 tailor /'teɪlə/ 40, 97
 Taiwanese /taɪwə'nɪz/ 31
 take, *expressions with* 39, 40, 41, 47, 48, 49, 58, 74, 77, 80, 81, 86, 87, 89, 90
 take-away /'teɪkəweɪ/ 45
 takeover /'teɪkəʊvə/ 14
 talent 26 (~ed) 34
 talk, *expressions with* 82
 talk(s) 18, 92
 talking of... 75
 talking-point 82
 Tamil /'tæmɪl/ 31
 tanned /tænd/ 33
 tap 71, 93
 tape /teɪp/ 28 (~ measure) 48 (~ recorder) 52
 target 43
 tarragon /'tærəɡən/ 43
 tart 18
 tartan 47
 taste /teɪst/ (-ty) (~ful) 71 (~less) 11, 43, 71
 tattoo /tæ'tuː/ 16
 tawdry /'tɔːdri/ 15
 tax /tæks/ 13, 56
 tax-free 12
 taxi 93 (~ rank) 45
 tea 19, 28, 66 (~ bag/pot/towel) 13, 26, 36, 66
 teach 1 (~er) 8, 18, 26, 40, 97
 teacher's pet 78
 teacher-training college 39
 team 18, 29 (~mate) 33
 tearful /'tɪəfəl/ 8
 teasmade /'tiːzmeɪd/ 50
 teaspoonful /'tiːspuːnfəl/ 48
 technical college 39
 technology /tek'nɒlədʒi/ (-gist) 52
 teddy bear /'tedɪbeə/ 15
 tee /tiː/ 19
 teeth 95
 telecommunications 52
 telepathy /tə'lepəθi/ 71
 telephone (-nist) 18
 teleworking /'teliwɜːkɪŋ/ 99
 telly /'teli/ 7, 98
 temper /'tempə/ 30, 88
 temperance /'temprəns/ 11, 48
 temporary /'tempəri/ 58
 tempt (~ation) 69
 ten-pin bowling 41
 tenant 62
 tend 1, 45
 tender 19 (~ness) 11
 tennis 41, 45
 tense 34
 tension /'tenʃən/ 30
 tent 2
 (on) tenterhooks /'tentəhʊks/ 80
 term 93
 terms 89
 terrace /'terɪs/ (~d) 36
 terrify /'terɪfaɪ/ 8
 terrorist /'terərɪst/ (-ise) 4, 8, 55
 test(s) 39, 48
 texture /'tekstʃə/ 64
 Thai /tai/ 31
 thanks 1, 7

that is to say 100
 that reminds me 75
 that's all well and good 23
 that's it/that 75
 thaw /θɔ:/ 32
 theatre /'θiətə/ 3, 42, 45
 theft /θeft/ 55
 then 20
 thermal spring 44
 thermometer /θɜ'mɒmɪtə/ 48
 thick /θɪk/ 64
 thin 64 (~-faced) 33 (~-lipped)
 12 (as ~ as a rake 76
 thinker 67
 third /θɜ:d/ 51
 thirsty /'θɜ:sti/ 68
 thirtyish /'θɜ:tiʃ/ 8
 this and that 75
 this is it 75
 this, that and the other 75
 thistle /'θɪsəl/ 46
 thorn /θɔ:n/ 46
 though /ðəʊ/ 18
 thought /θɔ:t/ 11
 thread /θred/ 26, 92
 threaten /'θretən/ 70
 three-dimensional 51
 thrifty /'θrɪfti/ 4, 34
 thrilled /θrɪld/ (-ling) 68
 thrive /θraɪv/ 46
 through /θru:/ 18, 19
 through road 96
 throughout /θru:'aut/ 20
 throw /θrəʊ/ 2
 throw away 87
 thud /θʌd/ 61
 thunder 30 (~storm) 32
 thyme /taɪm/ 43
 ticket collector/holder/office 8,
 49
 (the) tide has turned 80
 tidy /'taɪdi/ 88
 tight(s) /taɪt(s)/ 27, 47, 93
 (in a) tight corner 80
 tight-fisted 34
 tight-fitting 12
 till then 20
 timber /'tɪmbə/ 26
 time, *expressions with* 58
 time and time again 58
 (the) time (that) 20
 time bomb 38
 time-consuming 12
 time share 36, 50
 timeless /'taɪmləs/ 58
 tin 66 (~ opener) 8, 13
 tinkle /'tɪŋkəl/ 17

tiny /'taɪni/ 57
 tip 26
 (on the) tip of one's tongue 83
 tippex /'tɪpeks/ 40
 tiptoe /'tɪptəʊ/ 83
 tire /'taɪə/ 19 (~d) 48, 57, 68
 tissues /'tɪfuz/ 66
 titfer /'tɪtfə/ 95
 to and fro 77
 to boot 24
 to my mind 67
 to the touch 64
 toe 19
 toe the line 80, 83
 tolerant 9
 tolerate 4, 88
 tom 73
 tomb /tu:m/ 18
 tomcat 2
 tongs /tɒŋz/ 27
 tons of 57
 too wit too woo
 /tə'wɪt tə'wu:/ 73
 tool /tu:l/ (~ box) 66
 tooth /tu:θ/ 2 (~ paste) 26, 30,
 66
 top 51
 top-hole 95
 top-secret 12
 top of the class 78
 (on) top form 79
 (on) top of (all) that 24
 (on) top of the world 79
 topic /'tɒpɪk/ 25
 topnotch /tɒp'nɒtʃ/ 81
 tore /tɔ:/ 63
 torrential rain 32
 tortoise /'tɔ:təs/ 1, 46
 totally 57
 touch /tʌtʃ/ 11, 71
 tough /tʌf/ 18
 tour /tɔ:/ 50
 touring /'tɔ:ɪŋ/ 2
 tow /təʊ/ 19
 town council 54
 Town Hall 45
 toy /tɔɪ/ 66
 tracksuit 27
 tractor /'træktə/ 40
 trade 28
 traditional (~ist) 67
 traffic (~ jam/lights/system/
 warden) 13, 27, 45, 55
 trafficking /'træfɪkɪŋ/ 55
 tragedy /'trædʒədi/ 38
 training 26
 tram 49

transfer
 /'træns'fɜ:/ /'trænsfɜ:/ 18
 transitive 3
 transport /'træns'pɔ:t/ /træn'spɔ:t/
 (~ation) 10, 18, 30, 49
 transpose /træns'pəʊz/ 10
 trashcan /'træʃkæn/ 93
 travel 26, 50, 63
 trawler /'trɔ:lə/ 49
 tread /tred/ 18
 treatment 48
 tree 46
 tremble /'treɪnbəl/ 72
 tremor /'tremə/ 38
 trendy /'trendi/ 47
 trespasser /'trespəsə/ 96
 trial /'traɪəl/ 55
 triangle /'traɪæŋɡəl/ 2, 51
 triangular /traɪ'æŋɡjələ/ 51
 tributary /'trɪbjətəri/ 44
 trickle /'trɪkəl/ 17
 trip 26
 trot 73
 trouble (~some) (-ling) 65, 90
 trouble and strife 95
 trousers 1, 27, 47, 93
 trout /traʊt/ 43
 truck 93
 trunk 46, 93
 trunks 27
 trustworthy /'trʌstwɜ:ði/ 34
 try 55
 try on 47
 tsar /sɑ:/ /tsɑ:/ 16
 T-shirt 47
 tub /tʌb/ 66
 tube /tʃu:b/ 7, 30, 66
 tulip /'tʃu:lɪp/ 16
 tumble dryer 36
 tummytuck /'tʌmɪtʌk/ 99
 tundra /'tʌndrə/ 16
 tungsten /'tʌŋstən/ 16
 turbulent /'tɜ:bjələnt/ 44
 Turkish 31
 turn, *expressions with* 35, 91
 turn-out 14
 turning point 80
 turnip 43
 turnout 91
 turnover 14
 tusk 46
 tutor /'tu:tə/ 39
 TV (set) 50, 53, 98
 tweed /twi:d/ 15
 tweezers /'twi:zəz/ 27
 twig /twɪɡ/ 46
 twinkle /'twɪŋkəl/ 61

- twist one's ankle 37
 (in) two minds 79
 two and two together, put 88
 two-dimensional 51
 two-faced 12
 tycoon /taɪ'ku:n/ 16
 typewriter 8
 typhoid /'taɪfɔɪd/ 38
 typist /'taɪpɪst/ 8, 40, 97
 tyre(s) /'taɪə(z)/ 19, 49, 95
- ugly /'ʌɡli/ (-liness) 11, 33
 Ukrainian /ju:'kreɪnɪən/ 31
 ulcer /'ʌlsə/ 48
 umbrella 88
 unaccompanied 96
 unattractive 33
 unbend 9
 uncertainty 30
 uncomfortable 9
 unconvincing 9
 uncountable 4
 under the weather 74, 79
 underactive 9
 undercooked 9, 43
 underdone 43
 underfoot 64
 underground railway 93
 underhand 2
 underpaid 9
 underpants 27, 93
 underpass 93
 underpriced 2
 undershirt 93
 understand 85, 86, 87
 undertake 86
 undertrials 94
 underused 9
 underwear 26, 47, 94
 underweight 9
 underworked 9
 undo 9 /ʌn'du:/
 undress 9, 47
 uneasily 70
 unemployed 6
 unemployment 11
 (~ benefit) 56
 Unesco /ju:'neskəʊ/ 98
 uneven 49
 unfold 9
 ungrateful 9
 unhappiness 68 (-pily) 70
 unheard-of 12
 uni /'ju:ni/ 94
 union official 40
 university 39, 45
 unjust 9
- unleaded petrol 44
 unless 21
 unlikely 60
 unload 9
 unlock 9
 unmanned 97
 unmarried (~man /woman) 9, 97
 unprincipled 34
 unskilled worker 40
 unstaffed 97
 untidy-looking 33
 unusual 2
 unveil 9
 unwrap 9
 unzip 9
 up and down 77
 up in arms 79
 up to it 74
 up to the ears 1
 uplifted 68
 upset 14, 18, 68
 upshot /'ʌpʃɒt/ 22
 upskiing 99
 urban 3
 urge /ɜ:ʤ/ 70
 Uruguayan /ju:rə'ɡwɑɪən/ 31
 use 19, 89 (~ up) 87
 useful/less 8
 utility room 36
 utterly /'ʌtəli/ 57
 V-neck /'vi:nek/ 47
 vacancy /'veɪkənsi/ 96
 vacate /veɪ'keɪt/ 50
 vacation /veɪ'keɪʃən/ 93
 vacuum cleaner /'vækju:m/ 36
 valley 44
 valueless 56
 van 49
 vandalism 45
 variety show 53
 vase /vɑ:z/ 37
 vast 57
 veal /vi:l/ 43
 vegetarian 67
 vegetation 46
 vehicle /'vi:ɪkəl/ 49, 96
 velocity /və'lɒsɪti/ 63
 velvet /'velvət/ 47
 vendetta /ven'detə/ 16
 Venezuelan /venəz'weɪlən/ 31
 venison 43
 verandah 36
 verb 4
 verdict /'vɜ:dɪkt/ 55
 verse 42
 very 57, 60
- vest 93
 vet 7, 40, 95
 viaduct /'vaɪədəkt/ 10
 vice-president 54
 victim 38
 Victorian 45
 video camera/cassette
 /recorder/tape 52, 53
 view 2, 25, 50, 67, 89
 villa 36
 vinegar /'vɪnɪɡə/ 26, 43, 71
 violin /vaɪə'li:n/ (~ist) 3, 8
 virus /'vaɪrəs/ 48
 vision /'vɪʒən/ 11
 vivid 64
 vogueing /'vəʊɡɪŋ/ 99
 voice 48
 volcano /vɒl'keɪnəʊ/ 38, 44
 vote /vəʊt/ 54
 vow /vəʊ/ 92
 vulgar fraction 51
- wage 56
 waist /weɪst/ 19
 waistcoat /'weɪskəʊt/ 47, 93
 wait 19
 waiter/waitress 97
 waiting-room 49
 walk-out 14
 wallet /'wɒlət/ 93
 wally /'wɒli/ 95
 waltz /wɒltz/ 16
 wand /wɒnd/ 18
 wander /'wɒndə/ 18
 Wanderlust /'wɒndəlɒst/ 16
 want 60, 85
 want to have your cake and
 eat it 81
 war 38, 85
 warder /'wɔ:də/ 95
 wardrobe /'wɔ:drəʊb/ 3, 93
 warm-hearted 12
 warmth /wɔ:mθ/ 11
 wash up 93
 washable /'wɒʃəbəl/ 8
 washing powder 26
 washing-up (liquid) 26, 36, 66,
 85
 waste 19 (~ disposal) 44
 (~ paper) 66
 water /wɔ:tə/ 18, 66 (~fall) 44
 watt /wɒt/ 15
 wavy /'weɪvi/ 33
 (a) way with 7
 way out 25
 weak (~ness) 8, 11, 57
 wealth /welθ/ 11

- wearunders /'weərʌndəz/ 94
 weather 1, 19, 26, 30
 (~ forecast) 53
 wed 92
 wee /wi:/ 94
 weigh /wei/ 19, 48, 64 (~ty) 64
 weird /wiəd/ 34
 welfare state 13
 well (then) 100
 well-behaved 12
 well-built 33
 well-dressed 12, 33, 47
 well-off 12
 well worth a... 45
 wellingtons /'welɪŋtənz/
 (wellies) 5, 15, 27
 whacked /wækt/ 17
 what if 21
 what with one thing and
 another 75
 what's more 24
 what's on? 42
 wheels /wi:lz/ 95
 wheeze /wi:z/ 17
 when it comes to... 75
 where was I? 100
 whereabouts /'weərəbaʊts/ 27
 wherever /weə'revə/ 21
 whether 19
 whichever 21
 while 20
 whine /wain/ 19
 whip /wɪp/ 17
 whirl /wɜ:l/ 17
 whirr /wɜ:z/ 17
 whisk /wɪsk/ 17
 whiskers /'wɪskəz/ 2, 46
 whisper /'wɪspə/ 70
 whistle /'wɪsəl/ 17, 18
 (as) white as snow / a sheet 76
 whiting /'waɪtɪŋ/ 43
 whizz /wɪz/ 17
 whoever /hu:'evə/ 21
 wicked /'wɪkɪd/ 95
 wide (~n) 59
 wide-eyed 12
 width /wɪdθ/ 11, 59
 wife-to-be 35
 willow /'wɪləʊ/ 46
 wind 19, 30, 32
 window cleaner 40
 windscreen (~ wiper) 8, 13
 windsurfing 41, 50
 wine 19, 66 (~ and dine) 77
 wings /wɪŋz/ 46, 49
 wink /wɪŋk/ 72
 wisdom 11
 wishbone /'wɪʃbəʊn/ 6
 wishful thinking 6
 with a view to / the aim of 22
 withdraw /wɪð'drɔ:/ 56
 wither /'wɪðə/ 38
 within walking distance, 45
 with-it 47
 witness 55, 71
 wizard /'wɪzəd/ 95
 wolf /wʊlf/ 29
 womanhood 11
 won /wʌn/ 41
 womb /wu:m/ 18
 wood 26, 28, 44, 66
 (can't see the ~ for the
 trees) 91
 woof /wʊf/ 73
 wool /wʊl/ (~len) 26, 47
 word (~y) 3, 18
 word-processing (-sor) 13, 52
 work 18, 26, 28, 29, 30, 37,
 40 (~s) 42
 workaholic /wɜ:kə'hɒlɪk/ 40
 worker 8
 workmate 35
 workout /'wɜ:kaut/ 14
 work like a dream 76
 world of difference 23
 (the) world's worst 81
 world-famous 12, 18
 worm /wɜ:m/ 46
 worn out 12, 68
 worried /'wʌrɪd/ 57, 68, 70
 worship /'wɜ:ʃɪp/ 8, 35, 69
 worth /wɜ:θ/ 45, 56
 wound /wu:nd/ /waʊnd/ 19, 38
 wrap up the discussion
 /ræp/ 82
 wreck /rek/ 19, 49
 wrestling /'reslɪŋ/ 41
 wriggle /'rɪɡəl/ (-gly) 17, 46
 wrinkle /'rɪŋkəl/ 33
 wrist /rɪst/ 48
 writer /'raɪtə/ 8, 26, 97
 write-off /'raɪtɒf/ 14
 write-up /'raɪtʌp/ 14
 wrong /rɒŋ/ 50, 57
 (get the ~ end of the stick)
 74, 82
 yacht /jɒt/ 5, 16, 49, 93
 yashmak /'jæʃmæk/ 16
 yawn /jɔ:n/ 72 (~ing gap) 23
 yearn /jɜ:n/ 69
 yellow fever 38
 Yemeni /'jeməni/ 31
 yes 95, 100
 yew /ju:/ 46
 yoghurt /'jɒɡət/ 16, 66
 you know/see 100
 youngster /'jʌŋstə/ 33
 youth club 45
 youth hostel 13, 29, 45, 50
 yuppy /'jʌpi/ 98
 zinc /zɪŋk/ 66
 zip 47
 zoology /zu:'ɒlədʒi/ (-gist)
 (-gical) 18, 52, 71
 zucchini /zu:'ki:ni/ 43

Proverbs & Sayings

A bird in the hand... 84
Absence makes... 84
All that glitters... 84
Don't count your chickens... 84
Don't cross your bridges... 84
Don't put all your eggs... 84
Let sleeping dogs lie. 91
Look before you leap. 90
Many hands make... 84
Never judge a book... 84
Never look a gift horse... 2, 84
People who live in glass houses.. 84
Take care of the pence... 84
There's no smoke... 84
Too many cooks... 84
When the cat's away... 84
You can lead a horse to water ... 84

Abbreviations

& co. 98	NE 98
a/c 98	NW 98
AIDS 48, 98	OAPs 98
ANC 98	o.n.o 98
Arr 98	OPEC 54, 98
asap 98	P.E. 2
Ave. 98	PIN 98
B and B 45	PLO 98
BBC 98	PM 54, 92, 98
BSc 98	POWs 98
BT 98	PS 98
c/o 98	PTO 98
CD 52, 98	ref 98
CFC 98	rep 98
CIA 98	RIP 98
CIS 98	RN 98
cresc 98	RSVP 98
Dep 98	SE 98
Dr 98	St 98
e.g. 98	SW 98
enc. 98	TV 50, 53, 98
ET 98	UFO 71, 98
etc. 24, 33, 98	UN 54, 98
EU 54	USSR 98
ext. 98	VAT 56
FBI 98	VDU 52
Fr 98	WC 98
GB 98	WHO 98
i.e. 98	
IRA 98	
KGB 98	
MD 98	
MI5 98	
Miss 97	
MP 54, 92, 98	
Mr 98	
Mrs 97	
Ms 97, 98	
NATO 54, 98	
NB 98	

English Vocabulary in Use

upper-intermediate & advanced

Michael McCarthy & Felicity O'Dell

English Vocabulary in Use is a vocabulary book for upper-intermediate and advanced learners of English, primarily designed as a self-study reference and practice book, but which can also be used for classroom work.

English Vocabulary in Use

- 100 easy-to-use units: vocabulary items are presented and explained on left-hand pages with a variety of follow-up activities on right-hand pages.
- Presents and explains new words and shows students how to use them and how to work out rules for using them.
- Helps to build on and expand existing vocabulary.
- Suggests tips and techniques for good learning habits.
- Gives ideas for follow-up tasks.
- Designed to be flexible: can be used both for self-study and in class.
- Provides a comprehensive key with not only answers to the exercises but also more comments on how the language is used.
- Includes a detailed index with phonetic transcription.



CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS

ISBN 0-521-42396-1



9 780521 423960